

# MATRICES

## In Geometry

---



G. V. V. Sharma

<https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/>  
and  
<https://www.gnu.org/licenses/fdl-1.3.en.html>

## CONTENTS

<b>1</b>	<b>Triangle</b>	<b>3</b>
1.1	Sides . . . . .	3
1.2	Formulae . . . . .	5
1.3	Median . . . . .	5
1.4	Altitude . . . . .	7
1.5	Perpendicular Bisector . . . . .	8
1.6	Angle Bisector . . . . .	9
1.7	Eigenvalues and Eigenvectors . . . . .	10
1.8	Formulae . . . . .	10
1.9	Matrices . . . . .	11
<b>2</b>	<b>Vectors</b>	<b>12</b>
2.1	Addition and Subtraction . . . . .	12
2.2	Section Formula . . . . .	12
2.3	Rank . . . . .	16
2.4	Length . . . . .	17
2.5	Direction . . . . .	17
2.6	Scalar Product . . . . .	19
2.7	Formulae . . . . .	23
2.8	Orthogonality . . . . .	23
2.9	Vector Product . . . . .	28
2.10	Formulae . . . . .	32
2.11	Miscellaneous . . . . .	32
2.12	Formulae . . . . .	33
<b>3</b>	<b>Constructions</b>	<b>34</b>
3.1	Triangle . . . . .	34
3.2	Quadrilateral . . . . .	36
3.3	Formulae . . . . .	36
<b>4</b>	<b>Linear Forms</b>	<b>37</b>
4.1	Equation . . . . .	37
4.2	Parallel . . . . .	41
4.3	Perpendicular . . . . .	42
4.4	Formulae . . . . .	49
4.5	Angle . . . . .	49
4.6	Intersection . . . . .	50
4.7	Miscellaneous . . . . .	52
4.8	Formulae . . . . .	54
<b>5</b>	<b>Skew Lines</b>	<b>54</b>
5.1	Least Squares . . . . .	54
5.2	Formulae . . . . .	56
5.3	Singular Value Decomposition . . . . .	56
5.4	Formulae . . . . .	58
<b>6</b>	<b>Circle</b>	<b>59</b>
6.1	Equation . . . . .	59
6.2	Formulae . . . . .	64
6.3	Miscellaneous . . . . .	64
<b>7</b>	<b>Conics</b>	<b>64</b>
7.1	Equation . . . . .	64
7.2	Formulae . . . . .	69
7.3	Chords and Tangents . . . . .	71
7.4	Formulae . . . . .	71
7.5	Miscellaneous . . . . .	71
	<b>Appendix A: Conic Section</b>	<b>71</b>

## 1 TRIANGLE

Consider a triangle with vertices

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1)$$

## 1.1 Sides

1.1.1. The direction vector of  $AB$  is defined as

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} \quad (1.1.1.1)$$

Find the direction vectors of  $AB, BC$  and  $CA$ .

**Solution:**

a) The Direction vector of  $AB$  is

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -4 - 1 \\ 6 - (-1) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -5 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.1.1.2)$$

b) The Direction vector of  $BC$  is

$$\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -3 - (-4) \\ -5 - 6 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -11 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.1.1.3)$$

c) The Direction vector of  $CA$  is

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 - (-3) \\ -1 - (-5) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.1.1.4)$$

1.1.2. The length of side  $BC$  is

$$c = \|\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}\| \triangleq \sqrt{(\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A})^T (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A})} \quad (1.1.2.1)$$

where

$$\mathbf{A}^T \triangleq (1 \quad -1) \quad (1.1.2.2)$$

Similarly,

$$b = \|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B}\|, a = \|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C}\| \quad (1.1.2.3)$$

Find  $a, b, c$ .

a) From (1.1.1.2),

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -7 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (1.1.2.4)$$

$$\Rightarrow c = \|\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}\| = \|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}\| \quad (1.1.2.5)$$

$$= \sqrt{\begin{pmatrix} 5 & -7 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -7 \end{pmatrix}} = \sqrt{(5)^2 + (7)^2} \quad (1.1.2.6)$$

$$= \sqrt{74} \quad (1.1.2.7)$$

b) Similarly, from (1.1.1.3),

$$a = \|\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C}\| = \sqrt{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 11 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 11 \end{pmatrix}} \quad (1.1.2.8)$$

$$= \sqrt{(1)^2 + (11)^2} = \sqrt{122} \quad (1.1.2.9)$$

and from (1.1.1.4),

c)

$$b = \|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C}\| = \sqrt{\begin{pmatrix} 4 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}} \quad (1.1.2.10)$$

$$= \sqrt{(4)^2 + (4)^2} = \sqrt{32} \quad (1.1.2.11)$$

1.1.3. Points  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}, \mathbf{C}$  are defined to be collinear if

$$\text{rank} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ \mathbf{A} & \mathbf{B} & \mathbf{C} \end{pmatrix} = 2 \quad (1.1.3.1)$$

Are the given points in (1) collinear?

**Solution:** From (1),

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ \mathbf{A} & \mathbf{B} & \mathbf{C} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -4 & -3 \\ -1 & 6 & -5 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_3 \leftarrow R_3 + R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -4 & -3 \\ 0 & 2 & -8 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.1.3.2)$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_2 \leftarrow R_1 - R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 5 & 4 \\ 0 & 2 & -8 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_3 \leftarrow R_3 - \frac{2}{5}R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 5 & 4 \\ 0 & 0 & -\frac{48}{5} \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.1.3.3)$$

There are no zero rows. So,

$$\text{rank} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ \mathbf{A} & \mathbf{B} & \mathbf{C} \end{pmatrix} = 3 \quad (1.1.3.4)$$

Hence, the points  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}, \mathbf{C}$  are not collinear. This is visible in Fig. 1.1.3.



Fig. 1.1.3:  $\triangle ABC$

1.1.4. The parametric form of the equation of  $AB$  is

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{A} + k\mathbf{m} \quad k \neq 0, \quad (1.1.4.1)$$

where

$$\mathbf{m} = \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} \quad (1.1.4.2)$$

is the direction vector of  $AB$ . Find the parametric equations of  $AB, BC$  and  $CA$ .

**Solution:** From (1.1.4.1) and (1.1.1.2), the parametric

equation for  $AB$  is given by

$$AB : \mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + k \begin{pmatrix} -5 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.1.4.3)$$

Similarly, from (1.1.1.3) and (1.1.1.4),

$$BC : \mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} + k \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -11 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.1.4.4)$$

$$CA : \mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix} + k \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.1.4.5)$$

1.1.5. The normal form of the equation of  $AB$  is

$$\mathbf{n}^\top (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{A}) = 0 \quad (1.1.5.1)$$

where

$$\mathbf{n}^\top \mathbf{m} = \mathbf{n}^\top (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}) = 0 \quad (1.1.5.2)$$

$$\text{or, } \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{m} \quad (1.1.5.3)$$

Find the normal form of the equations of  $AB$ ,  $BC$  and  $CA$ .

**Solution:**

a) From (1.1.1.3), the direction vector of side  $BC$  is

$$\mathbf{m} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -11 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.1.5.4)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -11 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -11 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.1.5.5)$$

from (1.1.5.3). Hence, from (1.1.5.1), the normal equation of side  $BC$  is

$$\mathbf{n}^\top (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{B}) = 0 \quad (1.1.5.6)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} -11 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} -11 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.1.5.7)$$

$$\Rightarrow BC : \begin{pmatrix} 11 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = -38 \quad (1.1.5.8)$$

b) Similarly, for  $AB$ , from (1.1.1.2),

$$\mathbf{m} = \begin{pmatrix} -5 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.1.5.9)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -5 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.1.5.10)$$

and

$$\mathbf{n}^\top (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{A}) = 0 \quad (1.1.5.11)$$

$$\Rightarrow AB : \mathbf{n}^\top \mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 7 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.1.5.12)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 7 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = 2 \quad (1.1.5.13)$$

c) For  $CA$ , from (1.1.1.4),

$$\mathbf{m} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.1.5.14)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.1.5.15)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{n}^\top (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{C}) = 0 \quad (1.1.5.16)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix} = 2 \quad (1.1.5.17)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix} = 2 \quad (1.1.5.18)$$

1.1.6. The area of  $\triangle ABC$  is defined as

$$\frac{1}{2} \|(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}) \times (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C})\| \quad (1.1.6.1)$$

where

$$\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} \triangleq \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -4 \\ -1 & 6 \end{vmatrix} \quad (1.1.6.2)$$

Find the area of  $\triangle ABC$ .

**Solution:** From (1.1.1.2) and (1.1.1.4),

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -7 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.1.6.3)$$

$$\Rightarrow (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}) \times (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C}) = \begin{vmatrix} 5 & 4 \\ -7 & 4 \end{vmatrix} \quad (1.1.6.4)$$

$$= 5 \times 4 - 4 \times (-7) \quad (1.1.6.5)$$

$$= 48 \quad (1.1.6.6)$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{1}{2} \|(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}) \times (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C})\| = \frac{48}{2} = 24 \quad (1.1.6.7)$$

which is the desired area.

1.1.7. Find the angles  $A, B, C$  if

$$\cos A \triangleq \frac{(\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A})^\top (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A})}{\|\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}\| \|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}\|} \quad (1.1.7.1)$$

**Solution:**

a) From (1.1.1.2), (1.1.1.4), (1.1.2.7) and (1.1.2.11)

$$(\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A})^\top (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}) = \begin{pmatrix} -5 & 7 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.1.7.2)$$

$$= -8 \quad (1.1.7.3)$$

$$\Rightarrow \cos A = \frac{-8}{\sqrt{74} \sqrt{32}} = \frac{-1}{\sqrt{37}} \quad (1.1.7.4)$$

$$\Rightarrow A = \cos^{-1} \frac{-1}{\sqrt{37}} \quad (1.1.7.5)$$

b) From (1.1.1.2), (1.1.1.3), (1.1.2.7) and (1.1.2.9)

$$(\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B})^\top (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -11 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -7 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.1.7.6)$$

$$= 82 \quad (1.1.7.7)$$

$$\Rightarrow \cos B = \frac{82}{\sqrt{74} \sqrt{122}} = \frac{41}{\sqrt{2257}} \quad (1.1.7.8)$$

$$\Rightarrow B = \cos^{-1} \frac{41}{\sqrt{2257}} \quad (1.1.7.9)$$

c) From (1.1.1.3), (1.1.1.4), (1.1.2.9) and (1.1.2.11)

$$(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C})^\top (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C}) = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 11 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.1.7.10)$$

$$= 40 \quad (1.1.7.11)$$

$$\Rightarrow \cos C = \frac{40}{\sqrt{32}\sqrt{122}} = \frac{5}{\sqrt{61}} \quad (1.1.7.12)$$

$$\Rightarrow C = \cos^{-1} \frac{5}{\sqrt{61}} \quad (1.1.7.13)$$

All codes for this section are available at

codes/triangle/sides.py

which can be expressed as

$$(\mathbf{A} \ \mathbf{B} \ \mathbf{C})^\top \mathbf{n} = c \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.5.4)$$

$$\equiv (\mathbf{A} \ \mathbf{B} \ \mathbf{C})^\top \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (1.5.5)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ \mathbf{A} & \mathbf{B} & \mathbf{C} \end{pmatrix}^\top \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{n} \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{0} \quad (1.5.6)$$

yielding (1.1.3.1). Rank is defined to be the number of linearly independent rows or columns of a matrix.

1.6. The equation of a line can also be expressed as

$$\mathbf{n}^\top \mathbf{x} = 1 \quad (1.6.1)$$

## 1.2 Formulae

1.1. The equation of a line is given by

$$y = mx + c \quad (1.1.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ mx + c \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ c \end{pmatrix} + x \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ m \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.1.2)$$

yielding (1.1.4.1).

1.2. (1.1.1) can also be expressed as

$$y - mx = c \quad (1.2.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} -m & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = c \quad (1.2.2)$$

yielding (1.1.5.1).

1.3. The direction vector is

$$\mathbf{m} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ m \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.3.1)$$

and the normal vector is

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} -m \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.3.2)$$

1.4. From (1.1.4.1), if  $\mathbf{A}$ ,  $\mathbf{D}$  and  $\mathbf{C}$  are on the same line,

$$\mathbf{D} = \mathbf{A} + q\mathbf{m} \quad (1.4.1)$$

$$\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{D} + p\mathbf{m} \quad (1.4.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow p(\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{A}) + q(\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{C}) = 0, \quad p, q \neq 0 \quad (1.4.3)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{D} = \frac{p\mathbf{A} + q\mathbf{C}}{p + q} \quad (1.4.4)$$

yielding (1.3.1.1) upon substituting

$$k = \frac{p}{q}. \quad (1.4.5)$$

$(\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{A})$ ,  $(\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{C})$  are then said to be *linearly dependent*.

1.5. If  $\mathbf{A}$ ,  $\mathbf{B}$ ,  $\mathbf{C}$  are collinear, from (1.1.5.1),

$$\mathbf{n}^\top \mathbf{A} = c \quad (1.5.1)$$

$$\mathbf{n}^\top \mathbf{B} = c \quad (1.5.2)$$

$$\mathbf{n}^\top \mathbf{C} = c \quad (1.5.3)$$

## 1.3 Median

1.3.1. If  $\mathbf{D}$  divides  $BC$  in the ratio  $k : 1$ ,

$$\mathbf{D} = \frac{k\mathbf{C} + \mathbf{B}}{k + 1} \quad (1.3.1.1)$$

Find the mid points  $\mathbf{D}$ ,  $\mathbf{E}$ ,  $\mathbf{F}$  of the sides  $BC$ ,  $CA$  and  $AB$  respectively.

**Solution:** Since  $\mathbf{D}$  is the midpoint of  $BC$ ,

$$k = 1, \quad (1.3.1.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{D} = \frac{\mathbf{C} + \mathbf{B}}{2} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} -7 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.3.1.3)$$

Similarly,

$$\mathbf{E} = \frac{\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{C}}{2} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.3.1.4)$$

$$\mathbf{F} = \frac{\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}}{2} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.3.1.5)$$

1.3.2. Find the equations of  $AD$ ,  $BE$  and  $CF$ .

**Solution:**

a) The direction vector of  $AD$  is

$$\mathbf{m} = \mathbf{D} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -7/2 \\ 1/2 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} -9 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \equiv \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.3.2.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.3.2.2)$$

Hence the normal equation of median  $AD$  is

$$\mathbf{n}^\top (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{A}) = 0 \quad (1.3.2.3)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} = -2 \quad (1.3.2.4)$$

b) For  $BE$ ,

$$\mathbf{m} = \mathbf{E} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -9 \end{pmatrix} \equiv \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.3.2.5)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.3.2.6)$$

Hence the normal equation of median  $BE$  is

$$\mathbf{n}^\top (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{B}) = 0 \quad (1.3.2.7)$$

$$\Rightarrow (3 \ 1)\mathbf{x} = (3 \ 1)\begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} = -6 \quad (1.3.2.8)$$

c) For median  $CF$ ,

$$\mathbf{m} = \mathbf{F} - \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{3}{2} \\ \frac{5}{2} \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{3}{2} \\ \frac{15}{2} \end{pmatrix} \equiv \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.3.2.9)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.3.2.10)$$

Hence the normal equation of median  $CF$  is

$$\mathbf{n}^\top (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{C}) = 0 \quad (1.3.2.11)$$

$$\Rightarrow (5 \ -1)\mathbf{x} = (5 \ -1)\begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix} = -10 \quad (1.3.2.12)$$

1.3.3. Find the intersection  $\mathbf{G}$  of  $BE$  and  $CF$ .

**Solution:** From (1.3.2.8) and (1.3.2.12), the equations of  $BE$  and  $CF$  are, respectively,

$$(3 \ 1)\mathbf{x} = (-6) \quad (1.3.3.1)$$

$$(5 \ -1)\mathbf{x} = (-10) \quad (1.3.3.2)$$

From (1.3.3.1) and (1.3.3.2) the augmented matrix is

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 & -6 \\ 5 & -1 & -10 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_1 \leftarrow R_1 + R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 8 & 0 & -16 \\ 5 & -1 & -10 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.3.3.3)$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_1 \leftarrow R_1/8} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -2 \\ 5 & -1 & -10 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_2 \leftarrow R_2 - 5R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -2 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.3.3.4)$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_2 \leftarrow -R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -2 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.3.3.5)$$

using Gauss elimination. Therefore,

$$\mathbf{G} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.3.3.6)$$

1.3.4. Verify that

$$\frac{BG}{GE} = \frac{CG}{GF} = \frac{AG}{GD} = 2 \quad (1.3.4.1)$$

**Solution:**

a) From (1.3.1.4) and (1.3.3.6),

$$\mathbf{G} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -6 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{E} - \mathbf{G} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.3.4.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{G} - \mathbf{B} = 2(\mathbf{E} - \mathbf{G}) \quad (1.3.4.3)$$

$$\Rightarrow \|\mathbf{G} - \mathbf{B}\| = 2\|\mathbf{E} - \mathbf{G}\| \quad (1.3.4.4)$$

$$\text{or, } \frac{BG}{GE} = 2 \quad (1.3.4.5)$$

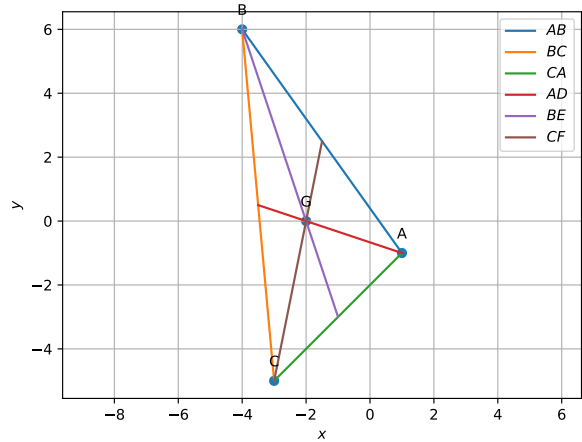


Fig. 1.3.5: Medians of  $\triangle ABC$  meet at  $\mathbf{G}$ .

b) From (1.3.1.5) and (1.3.3.6),

$$\mathbf{F} - \mathbf{G} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{G} - \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.3.4.6)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{G} - \mathbf{C} = 2(\mathbf{F} - \mathbf{G}) \quad (1.3.4.7)$$

$$\Rightarrow \|\mathbf{G} - \mathbf{C}\| = 2\|\mathbf{F} - \mathbf{G}\| \quad (1.3.4.8)$$

$$\text{or, } \frac{CG}{GF} = 2 \quad (1.3.4.9)$$

c) From (1.3.1.3) and (1.3.3.6),

$$\mathbf{G} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{D} - \mathbf{G} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.3.4.10)$$

$$\mathbf{G} - \mathbf{A} = 2(\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{G}) \quad (1.3.4.11)$$

$$\Rightarrow \|\mathbf{G} - \mathbf{A}\| = 2\|\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{G}\| \quad (1.3.4.12)$$

$$\text{or, } \frac{AG}{GD} = 2 \quad (1.3.4.13)$$

From (1.3.4.5), (1.3.4.9), (1.3.4.13)

$$\frac{BG}{GE} = \frac{CG}{GF} = \frac{AG}{GD} = 2 \quad (1.3.4.14)$$

1.3.5. Show that  $\mathbf{A}$ ,  $\mathbf{G}$  and  $\mathbf{D}$  are collinear.

**Solution:** Points  $\mathbf{A}$ ,  $\mathbf{D}$ ,  $\mathbf{G}$  are defined to be collinear if

$$\text{rank} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ \mathbf{A} & \mathbf{D} & \mathbf{G} \end{pmatrix} = 2 \quad (1.3.5.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -\frac{7}{2} & -2 \\ -1 & \frac{1}{2} & 0 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_3 \leftarrow R_3 + R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -\frac{7}{2} & -2 \\ 0 & -3 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.3.5.2)$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_2 \leftarrow R_2 - R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & -\frac{9}{2} & -3 \\ 0 & -3 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_3 \leftarrow R_3 - \frac{2}{3}R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & -\frac{9}{2} & -3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.3.5.3)$$

Thus, the matrix (1.3.5.1) has rank 2 and the points are collinear. Thus, the medians of a triangle meet at the point  $\mathbf{G}$ . See Fig. 1.3.5.



Fig. 1.3.7:  $AFDE$  forms a parallelogram in triangle  $ABC$

1.3.6. Verify that

$$\mathbf{G} = \frac{\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}}{3} \quad (1.3.6.1)$$

$\mathbf{G}$  is known as the *centroid* of  $\triangle ABC$ .

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{G} &= \frac{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix}}{3} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (1.3.6.2)$$

1.3.7. Verify that

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{F} = \mathbf{E} - \mathbf{D} \quad (1.3.7.1)$$

The quadrilateral  $AFDE$  is defined to be a parallelogram.

**Solution:**

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{F} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -3/2 \\ 5/2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 5/2 \\ -7/2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.3.7.2)$$

$$\mathbf{E} - \mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -7/2 \\ 1/2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 5/2 \\ -7/2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.3.7.3)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{F} = \mathbf{E} - \mathbf{D} \quad (1.3.7.4)$$

See Fig. 1.3.7,

All codes for this section are available in

codes/triangle/medians.py  
codes/triangle/pgm.py

#### 1.4 Altitude

1.4.1.  $\mathbf{D}_1$  is a point on  $BC$  such that

$$AD_1 \perp BC \quad (1.4.1.1)$$

and  $AD_1$  is defined to be the altitude. Find the normal vector of  $AD_1$ .

**Solution:** The normal vector of  $AD_1$  is the direction vector  $BC$  and is obtained from (1.1.1.3) as

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -11 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.4.1.2)$$

1.4.2. Find the equation of  $AD_1$ .

**Solution:** The equation of  $AD_1$  is

$$\mathbf{n}^\top (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{A}) = 0 \quad (1.4.2.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 11 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 11 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} = -12 \quad (1.4.2.2)$$

1.4.3. Find the equations of the altitudes  $BE_1$  and  $CF_1$  to the sides  $AC$  and  $AB$  respectively.

**Solution:**

a) From (1.1.1.4), the normal vector of  $CF_1$  is

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} -5 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.4.3.1)$$

and the equation of  $CF_1$  is

$$\mathbf{n}^\top (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{C}) = 0 \quad (1.4.3.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} -5 & 7 \end{pmatrix} \left( \mathbf{x} - \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix} \right) = 0 \quad (1.4.3.3)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 5 & -7 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = 20, \quad (1.4.3.4)$$

b) Similarly, from (1.1.1.2), the normal vector of  $BE_1$  is

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.4.3.5)$$

and the equation of  $BE_1$  is

$$\mathbf{n}^\top (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{B}) = 0 \quad (1.4.3.6)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \left( \mathbf{x} - \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} \right) = 0 \quad (1.4.3.7)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = 2, \quad (1.4.3.8)$$

1.4.4. Find the intersection  $\mathbf{H}$  of  $BE_1$  and  $CF_1$ .

**Solution:** The intersection of (1.4.3.8) and (1.4.3.4), is obtained from the matrix equation

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 5 & -7 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 20 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.4.4.1)$$

which can be solved as

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 \\ 5 & -7 & 20 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_2 \leftarrow R_2 - 5R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & -12 & 10 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.4.4.2)$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_2 \leftarrow \frac{R_2}{-12}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{-5}{6} \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_1 \leftarrow R_1 - R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & \frac{17}{6} \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{-5}{6} \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.4.4.3)$$

yielding

$$\mathbf{H} = \frac{1}{6} \begin{pmatrix} 17 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (1.4.4.4)$$

See Fig. 1.4.4.1

1.4.5. Verify that

$$(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{H})^\top (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C}) = 0 \quad (1.4.5.1)$$

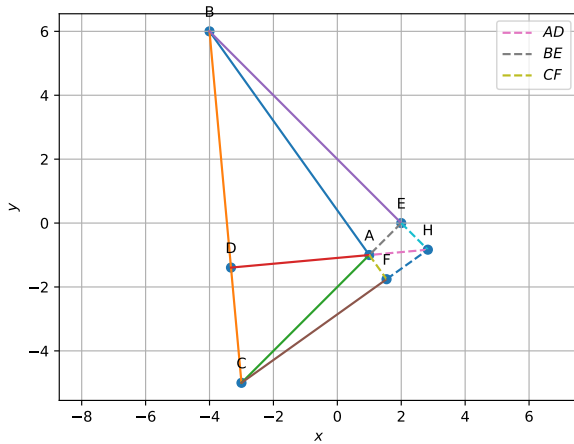


Fig. 1.4.4.1: Altitudes  $BE_1$  and  $CF_1$  intersect at  $H$

**Solution:** From (1.4.4.4),

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{H} = -\frac{1}{6} \begin{pmatrix} 11 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 11 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.4.5.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{H})^\top (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C}) = \frac{1}{6} \begin{pmatrix} 11 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 11 \end{pmatrix} = 0 \quad (1.4.5.3)$$

All codes for this section are available at

codes/triangle/altitude.py

### 1.5 Perpendicular Bisector

1.5.1. The equation of the perpendicular bisector of  $BC$  is

$$\left( \mathbf{x} - \frac{\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}}{2} \right) (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C}) = 0 \quad (1.5.1.1)$$

Substitute numerical values and find the equations of the perpendicular bisectors of  $AB$ ,  $BC$  and  $CA$ .

**Solution:** From (1.1.1.2), (1.1.1.3), (1.1.1.4), (1.3.1.3), (1.3.1.4) and (1.3.1.5),

$$\frac{\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}}{2} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} -7 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 11 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.5.1.2)$$

$$\frac{\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}}{2} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -7 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.5.1.3)$$

$$\frac{\mathbf{C} + \mathbf{A}}{2} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.5.1.4)$$

$$(1.5.1.5)$$

yielding

$$(\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C})^\top \left( \mathbf{x} - \frac{\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}}{2} \right) = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 11 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{7}{2} \\ \frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} = 9 \quad (1.5.1.6)$$

$$(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B})^\top \left( \mathbf{x} - \frac{\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}}{2} \right) = \begin{pmatrix} 5 & -7 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{3}{2} \\ \frac{5}{2} \end{pmatrix} = -25 \quad (1.5.1.7)$$

$$(\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A})^\top \left( \mathbf{x} - \frac{\mathbf{C} + \mathbf{A}}{2} \right) = \begin{pmatrix} -4 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} \\ -\frac{3}{2} \end{pmatrix} = 16 \quad (1.5.1.8)$$

Thus, the perpendicular bisectors are obtained from (1.5.1.1) as

$$BC : \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 11 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = 9 \quad (1.5.1.9)$$

$$CA : \begin{pmatrix} 5 & -7 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = -25 \quad (1.5.1.10)$$

$$AB : \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = -4 \quad (1.5.1.11)$$

1.5.2. Find the intersection  $\mathbf{O}$  of the perpendicular bisectors of  $AB$  and  $AC$ .

**Solution:**

The intersection of (1.5.1.10) and (1.5.1.11), can be obtained as

$$\begin{pmatrix} 5 & -7 & -25 \\ 1 & 1 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_2 \leftarrow 5R_2 - R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 5 & -7 & -25 \\ 0 & 12 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.5.2.1)$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_1 \leftarrow \frac{12}{7}R_1 + R_2} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{60}{7} & 0 & \frac{-265}{7} \\ 0 & 12 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_2 \leftarrow \frac{1}{12}R_2} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{60}{7} & 0 & \frac{-265}{7} \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{5}{12} \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_1 \leftarrow \frac{7}{60}R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & \frac{-53}{12} \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{5}{12} \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.5.2.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{O} = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{53}{12} \\ \frac{5}{12} \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.5.2.3)$$

1.5.3. Verify that  $\mathbf{O}$  satisfies (1.5.1.1).  $\mathbf{O}$  is known as the circumcentre.

**Solution:** Substituting from (1.5.2.3) in (1.5.1.1), when substituted in the above equation,

$$\begin{aligned} & \left( \mathbf{O} - \frac{\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}}{2} \right)^\top (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C}) \\ &= \left( \frac{1}{12} \begin{pmatrix} -53 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} - \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} -7 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \right)^\top \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 11 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \frac{1}{12} \begin{pmatrix} -11 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 11 \end{pmatrix} = 0 \quad (1.5.3.1) \end{aligned}$$

1.5.4. Verify that

$$OA = OB = OC \quad (1.5.4.1)$$

1.5.5. Draw the circle with centre at  $\mathbf{O}$  and radius

$$R = OA \quad (1.5.5.1)$$

This is known as the *circumradius*.

**Solution:** See Fig. 1.5.5.1.

1.5.6. Verify that

$$\angle BOC = 2\angle BAC. \quad (1.5.6.1)$$

**Solution:**

a) To find the value of  $\angle BOC$  :

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{O} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{5}{12} \\ \frac{17}{12} \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{O} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{17}{12} \\ \frac{-65}{12} \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.5.6.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{O})^\top (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{O}) = \frac{-4270}{144} \quad (1.5.6.3)$$

$$\Rightarrow \|\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{O}\| = \frac{\sqrt{4514}}{12}, \|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{O}\| = \frac{\sqrt{4514}}{12} \quad (1.5.6.4)$$





Fig. 1.5.5.1: Circumcircle of  $\triangle ABC$  with centre  $O$ .

Thus,

$$\cos \angle BOC = \frac{(\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{O})^\top (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{O})}{\|\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{O}\| \|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{O}\|} = \frac{-4270}{4514} \quad (1.5.6.5)$$

$$\Rightarrow \angle BOC = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{-4270}{4514}\right) \quad (1.5.6.6)$$

$$= 161.07536^\circ \text{ or } 198.92464^\circ \quad (1.5.6.7)$$

b) To find the value of  $\angle BAC$  :

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -5 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.5.6.8)$$

$$\Rightarrow (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A})^\top (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}) = -8 \quad (1.5.6.9)$$

$$\|\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}\| = \sqrt{74} \|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}\| = 4\sqrt{2} \quad (1.5.6.10)$$

Thus,

$$\cos \angle BAC = \frac{(\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A})^\top (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A})}{\|\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}\| \|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}\|} = \frac{-8}{4\sqrt{148}} \quad (1.5.6.11)$$

$$\Rightarrow \angle BAC = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{-8}{4\sqrt{148}}\right) \quad (1.5.6.12)$$

$$= 99.46232^\circ \quad (1.5.6.13)$$

From (1.5.6.13) and (1.5.6.7),

$$2 \times \angle BAC = \angle BOC \quad (1.5.6.14)$$

1.5.7. Let

$$\mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & -\sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.5.7.1)$$

where

$$\theta = \angle BOC \quad (1.5.7.2)$$

Verify that

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{O} = \mathbf{P}(\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{O}) \quad (1.5.7.3)$$

All codes for this section are available at

codes/triangle/perp-bisect.py

## 1.6 Angle Bisector

1.6.1. Let  $\mathbf{D}_3, \mathbf{E}_3, \mathbf{F}_3$ , be points on  $AB, BC$  and  $CA$  respectively such that

$$BD_3 = BF_3 = m, CD_3 = CE_3 = n, AE_3 = AF_3 = p. \quad (1.6.1.1)$$

Obtain  $m, n, p$  in terms of  $a, b, c$  obtained in Problem 1.1.2.

**Solution:** From the given information,

$$a = m + n, \quad (1.6.1.2)$$

$$b = n + p, \quad (1.6.1.3)$$

$$c = m + p \quad (1.6.1.4)$$

which can be expressed as

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} m \\ n \\ p \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.6.1.5)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} m \\ n \\ p \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.6.1.6)$$

Using row reduction,

$$\left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right) \quad (1.6.1.7)$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_3 \leftarrow R_3 - R_1} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 & -1 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right) \quad (1.6.1.8)$$

$$\xrightarrow{\begin{matrix} R_3 \leftarrow R_3 + R_2 \\ R_1 \leftarrow R_1 - R_2 \end{matrix}} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & -1 & 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 1 \end{array} \right) \quad (1.6.1.9)$$

$$\xrightarrow{\begin{matrix} R_2 \leftarrow 2R_2 - R_3 \\ R_1 \leftarrow 2R_1 + R_3 \end{matrix}} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 2 & 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 1 \end{array} \right) \quad (1.6.1.10)$$

yielding

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}^{-1} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.6.1.11)$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} p &= \frac{c + b - a}{2} = \frac{\sqrt{74} + \sqrt{32} - \sqrt{122}}{2} \\ m &= \frac{a + c - b}{2} = \frac{\sqrt{74} + \sqrt{122} - \sqrt{32}}{2} \\ n &= \frac{a + b - c}{2} = \frac{\sqrt{122} + \sqrt{32} - \sqrt{74}}{2} \end{aligned} \quad (1.6.1.12)$$

upon substituting from (1.1.2.7), (1.1.2.9) and (1.1.2.11).

1.6.2. Using section formula, find

$$\mathbf{D}_3 = \frac{m\mathbf{C} + n\mathbf{B}}{m+n}, \mathbf{E}_3 = \frac{n\mathbf{A} + p\mathbf{C}}{n+p}, \mathbf{F}_3 = \frac{p\mathbf{B} + m\mathbf{A}}{p+m} \quad (1.6.2.1)$$

1.6.3. Find the circumcentre and circumradius of  $\triangle D_3E_3F_3$ . These are the *incentre* and *inradius* of  $\triangle ABC$ .

1.6.4. Draw the circumcircle of  $\triangle D_3E_3F_3$ . This is known as the *incircle* of  $\triangle ABC$ .

**Solution:** See Fig. 1.6.4.1

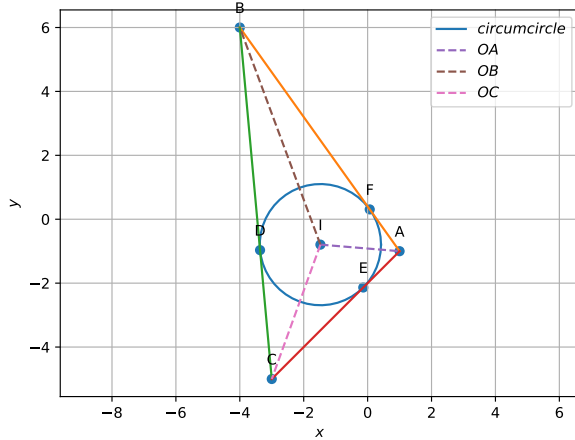


Fig. 1.6.4.1: Incircle of  $\triangle ABC$

1.6.5. Using (1.1.7.1) verify that

$$\angle BAI = \angle CAI. \quad (1.6.5.1)$$

$AI$  is the bisector of  $\angle A$ .

1.6.6. Verify that  $BI, CI$  are also the angle bisectors of  $\triangle ABC$ .

All codes for this section are available at

`codes/triangle/ang-bisect.py`

using row reduction. These are known as the eigenvectors of  $\Sigma$ .

1.7.5. Define

$$\mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (1.7.5.1)$$

$$\mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\mathbf{p}_1}{\|\mathbf{p}_1\|} & \frac{\mathbf{p}_2}{\|\mathbf{p}_2\|} \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.7.5.2)$$

1.7.6. Verify that

$$\mathbf{P}^\top = \mathbf{P}^{-1}. \quad (1.7.6.1)$$

$\mathbf{P}$  is defined to be an orthogonal matrix.

1.7.7. Verify that

$$\mathbf{P}^\top \Sigma \mathbf{P} = \mathbf{D}, \quad (1.7.7.1)$$

This is known as the spectral (eigenvalue) decomposition of a symmetric matrix

1.7.8. The direction vectors of the tangents from a point  $\mathbf{h}$  to the circle in (A.2.1) are given by

$$\mathbf{m} = \mathbf{P} \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{|\lambda_2|} \\ \pm \sqrt{|\lambda_1|} \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.7.8.1)$$

1.7.9. The points of contact of the pair of tangents to the circle in (A.2.1) from a point  $\mathbf{h}$  are given by

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{h} + \mu \mathbf{m} \quad (1.7.9.1)$$

where

$$\mu = -\frac{\mathbf{m}^\top (\mathbf{V}\mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u})}{\mathbf{m}^\top \mathbf{V}\mathbf{m}} \quad (1.7.9.2)$$

for  $\mathbf{m}$  in (1.7.8.1). Compute the points of contact. You should get the same points that you obtained in the previous section.

All codes for this section are available at

`codes/triangle/tangpair.py`

## 1.7 Eigenvalues and Eigenvectors

1.7.1. The equation of a circle is given by

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|^2 + 2\mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{x} + f = 0 \quad (1.7.1.1)$$

for

$$\mathbf{u} = -\mathbf{O}, f = \|\mathbf{O}\|^2 - r^2, \quad (1.7.1.2)$$

$\mathbf{O}$  being the incentre and  $r$  the inradius.

1.7.2. Compute

$$\Sigma = (\mathbf{V}\mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u})(\mathbf{V}\mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u})^\top - g(\mathbf{h})\mathbf{V} \quad (1.7.2.1)$$

for  $\mathbf{h} = \mathbf{A}$ .

1.7.3. Find the roots of the equation

$$|\lambda \mathbf{I} - \Sigma| = 0 \quad (1.7.3.1)$$

These are known as the eigenvalues of  $\Sigma$ .

1.7.4. Find  $\mathbf{p}$  such that

$$\Sigma \mathbf{p} = \lambda \mathbf{p} \quad (1.7.4.1)$$

## 1.8 Formulae

1.8.1 The equation of the *incircle* is given by

$$\|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{O}\|^2 = r^2 \quad (1.8.1.1)$$

which can be expressed as (A.2.1) using (1.7.1.2).

1.8.2 In Fig. 1.6.4.1, let (1.7.9.1) be the equation of  $AB$ . Then, the intersection of (1.7.9.1) and (A.2.1) can be expressed as

$$(\mathbf{h} + \mu \mathbf{m})^\top \mathbf{V} (\mathbf{h} + \mu \mathbf{m}) + 2\mathbf{u}^\top (\mathbf{h} + \mu \mathbf{m}) + f = 0 \quad (1.8.2.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mu^2 \mathbf{m}^\top \mathbf{V} \mathbf{m} + 2\mu \mathbf{m}^\top (\mathbf{V}\mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u}) + g(\mathbf{h}) = 0 \quad (1.8.2.2)$$

For (1.8.2.2) to have exactly one root, the discriminant

$$\{\mathbf{m}^\top (\mathbf{V}\mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u})\}^2 - g(\mathbf{h}) \mathbf{m}^\top \mathbf{V} \mathbf{m} = 0 \quad (1.8.2.3)$$

and (1.7.9.2) is obtained.

1.8.3 (1.8.2.3) can be expressed as

$$\mathbf{m}^\top (\mathbf{V}\mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u})^\top (\mathbf{V}\mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u}) \mathbf{m} - g(\mathbf{h}) \mathbf{m}^\top \mathbf{V}\mathbf{m} = 0 \quad (1.8.3.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{m}^\top \mathbf{\Sigma} \mathbf{m} = 0 \quad (1.8.3.2)$$

for  $\mathbf{\Sigma}$  defined in (1.8.3.2). Substituting (1.7.7.1) in (1.8.3.2),

$$\mathbf{m}^\top \mathbf{P} \mathbf{D} \mathbf{P}^\top \mathbf{m} = 0 \quad (1.8.3.3)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{v}^\top \mathbf{D} \mathbf{v} = 0 \quad (1.8.3.4)$$

where

$$\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{P}^\top \mathbf{m} \quad (1.8.3.5)$$

(1.8.3.4) can be expressed as

$$\lambda_1 v_1^2 - \lambda_2 v_2^2 = 0 \quad (1.8.3.6)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{v} = \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{|\lambda_2|} \\ \pm \sqrt{|\lambda_1|} \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.8.3.7)$$

after some algebra. From (1.8.3.7) and (1.8.3.5) we obtain (1.7.8.1).

## 1.9 Matrices

1.9.1. The matrix of the vertices of the triangle is defined as

$$\mathbf{P} = (\mathbf{A} \quad \mathbf{B} \quad \mathbf{C}) \quad (1.9.1.1)$$

1.9.2. Obtain the direction matrix of the sides of  $\triangle ABC$  defined as

$$\mathbf{M} = (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} \quad \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C} \quad \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}) \quad (1.9.2.1)$$

**Solution:**

$$\mathbf{M} = (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} \quad \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C} \quad \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}) \quad (1.9.2.2)$$

$$= (\mathbf{A} \quad \mathbf{B} \quad \mathbf{C}) \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.9.2.3)$$

where the second matrix above is known as a *circulant* matrix. Note that the 2nd and 3rd row of the above matrix are circular shifts of the 1st row.

1.9.3. Obtain the normal matrix of the sides of  $\triangle ABC$

**Solution:** Considering the rotation matrix

$$\mathbf{R} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (1.9.3.1)$$

the normal matrix is obtained as

$$\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{R} \mathbf{M} \quad (1.9.3.2)$$

1.9.4. Obtain  $a, b, c$ .

**Solution:** The sides vector is obtained as

$$\mathbf{d} = \sqrt{\text{diag}(\mathbf{M}^\top \mathbf{M})} \quad (1.9.4.1)$$

1.9.5. Obtain the constant terms in the equations of the sides of the triangle.

**Solution:** The constants for the lines can be expressed in

vector form as

$$\mathbf{c} = \text{diag} \{ (\mathbf{N}^\top \mathbf{P}) \} \quad (1.9.5.1)$$

1.9.6. Obtain the mid point matrix for the sides of the triangle

**Solution:**

$$(\mathbf{D} \quad \mathbf{E} \quad \mathbf{F}) = \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{A} \quad \mathbf{B} \quad \mathbf{C}) \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.9.6.1)$$

1.9.7. Obtain the median direction matrix.

**Solution:** The median direction matrix is given by

$$\mathbf{M}_1 = (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D} \quad \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{E} \quad \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{F}) \quad (1.9.7.1)$$

$$= (\mathbf{A} - \frac{\mathbf{B}+\mathbf{C}}{2} \quad \mathbf{B} - \frac{\mathbf{C}+\mathbf{A}}{2} \quad \mathbf{C} - \frac{\mathbf{A}+\mathbf{B}}{2}) \quad (1.9.7.2)$$

$$= (\mathbf{A} \quad \mathbf{B} \quad \mathbf{C}) \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \\ -\frac{1}{2} & 1 & -\frac{1}{2} \\ -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.9.7.3)$$

1.9.8. Obtain the median normal matrix.

1.9.9. Obtain the median equation constants.

1.9.10. Obtain the centroid by finding the intersection of the medians.

1.9.11. Find the normal matrix for the altitudes

**Solution:** The desired matrix is

$$\mathbf{M}_2 = (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C} \quad \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A} \quad \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}) \quad (1.9.11.1)$$

$$= (\mathbf{A} \quad \mathbf{B} \quad \mathbf{C}) \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & -1 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.9.11.2)$$

1.9.12. Find the constants vector for the altitudes.

**Solution:** The desired vector is

$$\mathbf{c}_2 = \text{diag} \{ (\mathbf{M}_2^\top \mathbf{P}) \} \quad (1.9.12.1)$$

1.9.13. Find the normal matrix for the perpendicular bisectors

**Solution:** The normal matrix is  $\mathbf{M}_2$

1.9.14. Find the constants vector for the perpendicular bisectors.

**Solution:** The desired vector is

$$\mathbf{c}_3 = \text{diag} \{ \mathbf{M}_2^\top (\mathbf{D} \quad \mathbf{E} \quad \mathbf{F}) \} \quad (1.9.14.1)$$

1.9.15. Find the points of contact.

**Solution:** The points of contact are given by

$$\begin{pmatrix} \frac{m\mathbf{C}+n\mathbf{B}}{m+n} & \frac{n\mathbf{A}+p\mathbf{C}}{n+p} & \frac{p\mathbf{B}+m\mathbf{A}}{p+m} \end{pmatrix} = (\mathbf{A} \quad \mathbf{B} \quad \mathbf{C}) \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \frac{n}{b} & \frac{m}{c} \\ \frac{n}{a} & 0 & \frac{p}{c} \\ \frac{m}{a} & \frac{p}{b} & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.9.15.1)$$

All codes for this section are available at

codes/triangle/mat-alg.py

## 2 VECTORS

## 2.1 Addition and Subtraction

2.1.1 Find the sum of the vectors  $\mathbf{a} = \hat{i} - 2\hat{j} + \hat{k}$ ,  $\mathbf{b} = -2\hat{i} + 4\hat{j} + 5\hat{k}$  and  $\mathbf{c} = \hat{i} - 6\hat{j} - 7\hat{k}$ .

2.1.2 In triangle ABC (Fig. 2.1.2.1), which of the following is not true:

- a)  $\vec{AB} + \vec{BC} + \vec{CA} = \mathbf{0}$
- b)  $\vec{AB} + \vec{BC} - \vec{CA} = \mathbf{0}$
- c)  $\vec{AB} + \vec{BC} - \vec{CA} = \mathbf{0}$
- d)  $\vec{AB} - \vec{BC} + \vec{CA} = \mathbf{0}$

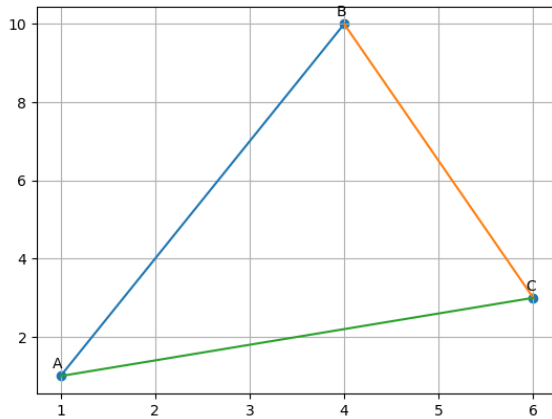


Fig. 2.1.2.1

**Solution:**

$$\vec{AB} + \vec{BC} + \vec{CA} = \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C} = \mathbf{0} \quad (2.1.2.1)$$

$$\vec{AB} + \vec{BC} - \vec{AC} = \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B} - (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}) = \mathbf{0} \quad (2.1.2.2)$$

$$\vec{AB} + \vec{BC} + \vec{AC} = \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A} = 2(\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}) \quad (2.1.2.3)$$

$$\vec{AB} - \vec{CB} + \vec{CA} = \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} - (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C}) + \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C} = \mathbf{0} \quad (2.1.2.4)$$

2.1.3 A girl walks 4 km towards west, then she walks 3 km in a direction  $30^\circ$  east of north and stops. Determine the girl's displacement from her initial point of departure.

**Solution:** Let

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B} = 3 \begin{pmatrix} \cos 60^\circ \\ \sin 60^\circ \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.1.3.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{5}{2} \\ \frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2} \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.1.3.2)$$

which is the displacement. See Fig. 2.1.3.1.

2.1.4 Without using distance formula, show that points A(-2, -1), B(4, 0), C(3, 3) and D(-3, 2) are the vertices of a parallelogram.

**Solution:**

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{D} - \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} -6 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.1.4.1)$$

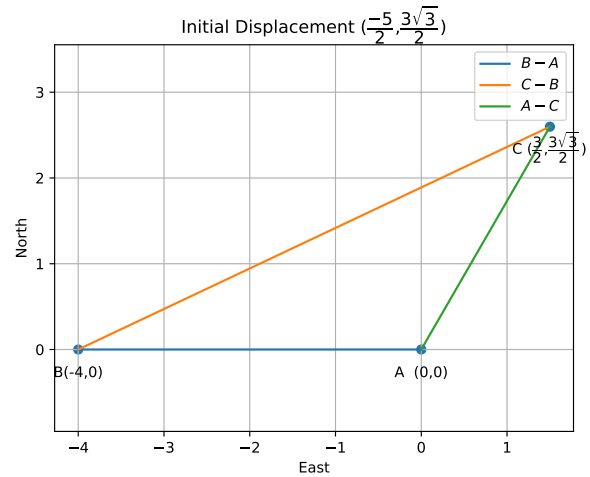


Fig. 2.1.3.1

Hence, ABCD is a parallelogram. See Fig. 2.1.4.1.



Fig. 2.1.4.1

2.1.5 The fourth vertex **D** of a parallelogram **ABCD** whose three vertices are **A**(-2, 3), **B**(6, 7) and **C**(8, 3) is

- a) (0, 1)
- b) (0, -1)
- c) (-1, 0)
- d) (1, 0)

2.1.6 Points **A**(4, 3), **B**(6, 4), **C**(5, -6) and **D**(-3, 5) are the vertices of a parallelogram.

2.1.7 The vector having initial and terminal points as (2, 5, 0) and (-3, 7, 4), respectively is

- a)  $-\hat{i} + 12\hat{j} + 4\hat{k}$
- b)  $5\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} - 4\hat{k}$
- c)  $5\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + 4\hat{k}$
- d)  $\hat{i} + \hat{j} + \hat{k}$

## 2.2 Section Formula

2.2.1 Find the coordinates of the point which divides the join of (-1, 7) and (4, -3) in the ratio 2:3.

**Solution:** Using section formula (1.3.1.1), the desired point is

$$\frac{1}{1 + \frac{3}{2}} \left( \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} + \frac{3}{2} \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix} \right) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.2.1.1)$$

See Fig. 2.2.1.1



Fig. 2.2.1.1

2.2.2 Find the coordinates of the points of trisection of the line segment joining (4, -1) and (-2, 3).

**Solution:** Using section formula,

$$\mathbf{R} = \frac{1}{1 + \frac{1}{2}} \left( \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \right) = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -\frac{5}{3} \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.2.2.1)$$

$$\mathbf{S} = \frac{1}{1 + \frac{2}{1}} \left( \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + \frac{2}{1} \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \right) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -\frac{7}{3} \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.2.2.2)$$

which are the desired points of trisection. See Fig. 2.2.2.1



Fig. 2.2.2.1

2.2.3 Find the ratio in which the line segment joining the points (-3, 10) and (6, -8) is divided by (-1, 6).

**Solution:** Using section formula,

$$\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} = \frac{\begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 10 \end{pmatrix} + k \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ -8 \end{pmatrix}}{1 + k} \quad (2.2.3.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow 7k \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} = 2 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.2.3.2)$$

$$\text{or, } k = \frac{2}{7} \quad (2.2.3.3)$$

See Fig. 2.2.3.1.

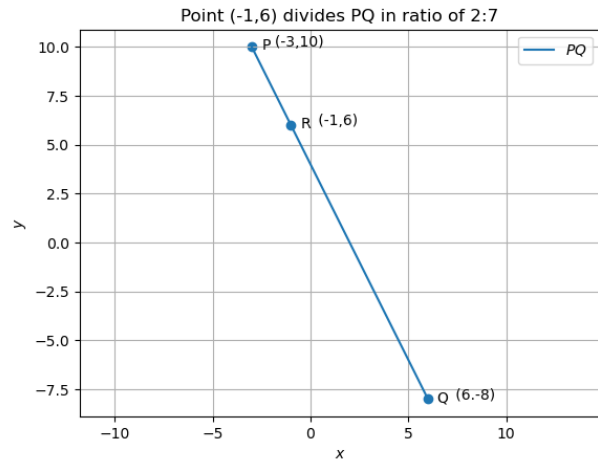


Fig. 2.2.3.1

2.2.4 If (1, 2), (4, y), (x, 6), (3, 5) are the vertices of a parallelogram taken in order, find x and y.

**Solution:** Since ABCD is a parallelogram,

$$\begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ y \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.2.4.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ y-2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x-3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.2.4.2)$$

$$\text{or, } x = 6, y = 3. \quad (2.2.4.3)$$

See Fig. 2.2.4.1.

2.2.5 Find the coordinates of a point A, where AB is the diameter of a circle whose centre is C(2, -3) and B is (1, 4).

**Solution:**

$$\mathbf{C} = \frac{\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}}{2} \Rightarrow \mathbf{A} = 2\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -10 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.2.5.1)$$

See Fig. 2.2.5.1.

2.2.6 If A and B are (-2, -2) and (2, -4), respectively, find the coordinates of P such that AP =  $\frac{3}{7}$ AB and P lies on the line segment AB.

**Solution:** Using section formula,

$$\mathbf{P} = \frac{1}{1 + \frac{3}{4}} \left( \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} + \frac{3}{4} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix} \right) = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{2}{7} \\ -\frac{20}{7} \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.2.6.1)$$

See Fig. 2.2.6.1.

2.2.7 Find the coordinates of the points which divide the line segment joining A(-2, 2) and B(2, 8) into four equal



Fig. 2.2.4.1

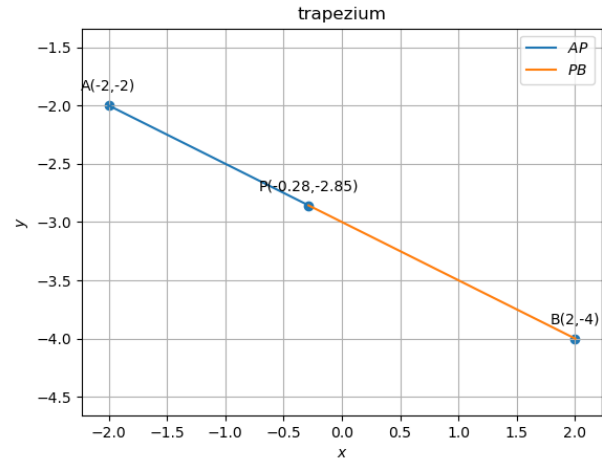


Fig. 2.2.6.1



Fig. 2.2.5.1



Fig. 2.2.7.1

parts.

**Solution:** Using section formula,

$$\mathbf{R}_k = \frac{\mathbf{B} + k\mathbf{A}}{1 + k} \quad (2.2.7.1)$$

See Table 2.2.7 and Fig. 2.2.7.1

TABLE 2.2.7

$k$	$\mathbf{R}_k$
3	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ \frac{7}{2} \end{pmatrix}$
1	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$
$\frac{1}{3}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \frac{13}{2} \end{pmatrix}$

2.2.8 Find the position vector of a point  $\mathbf{R}$  which divides the line joining two points  $\mathbf{P}$  and  $\mathbf{Q}$  whose position vectors are  $\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} - \hat{k}$  and  $-\hat{i} + \hat{j} + \hat{k}$  respectively, in the ratio 2 : 1

a) internally

b) externally

**Solution:** See Table 2.2.8.

TABLE 2.2.8

$k$	$\mathbf{R}_k$
2	$\frac{1}{3} \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 4 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$
-2	$\begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 0 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$

2.2.9 Find the position vector of the mid point of the vector joining the points  $\mathbf{P}(2, 3, 4)$  and  $\mathbf{Q}(4, 1, -2)$ .

**Solution:** The desired vector is

$$\frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} + \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.2.9.1)$$

2.2.10 Determine the ratio in which the line  $2x + y - 4 = 0$  divides the line segment joining the points  $A(2, -2)$  and  $B(3, 7)$ .

**Solution:** The given equation can be expressed as

$$(2 \ 1)\mathbf{x} = 4 \quad (2.2.10.1)$$

Using section formula in (2.2.10.1),

$$\mathbf{n}^T \left( \frac{k\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{A}}{k+1} \right) = c \quad (2.2.10.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow k = \frac{c - \mathbf{n}^T \mathbf{A}}{\mathbf{n}^T \mathbf{B} - c} \quad (2.2.10.3)$$

upon simplification. Substituting numerical values,

$$k = \frac{2}{9} \quad (2.2.10.4)$$

See Fig. 2.2.10.1.



Fig. 2.2.10.1

2.2.11 Let  $A(4, 2)$ ,  $B(6, 5)$  and  $C(1, 4)$  be the vertices of  $\triangle ABC$ .

- The median from  $A$  meets  $BC$  at  $D$ . Find the coordinates of the point  $D$ .
- Find the coordinates of the point  $P$  on  $AD$  such that  $AP : PD = 2 : 1$ .
- Find the coordinates of points  $Q$  and  $R$  on medians  $BE$  and  $CF$  respectively such that  $BQ : QE = 2 : 1$  and  $CR : RF = 2 : 1$ .
- What do you observe?
- If  $A, B$  and  $C$  are the vertices of  $\triangle ABC$ , find the coordinates of the centroid of the triangle.

**Solution:**

$$\mathbf{D} = \frac{\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}}{2} = \left( \frac{7}{2}, \frac{9}{2} \right) \quad (2.2.11.1)$$

$$\mathbf{E} = \frac{\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{C}}{2} = \left( \frac{5}{2}, \frac{3}{2} \right) \quad (2.2.11.2)$$

$$\mathbf{F} = \frac{\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}}{2} = \left( \frac{5}{2}, \frac{7}{2} \right) \quad (2.2.11.3)$$

$$\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{Q} = \mathbf{R} = \frac{1}{3} \begin{pmatrix} 11 \\ 11 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.2.11.4)$$

$$\mathbf{G} = \frac{\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}}{3} = \frac{1}{3} \begin{pmatrix} 11 \\ 11 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.2.11.5)$$

is the centroid. See Fig. 2.2.11.1.

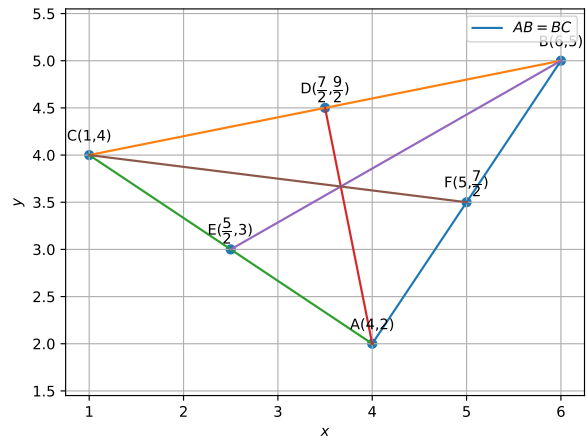


Fig. 2.2.11.1

2.2.12 Find the position vector of a point  $R$  which divides the line joining two points  $P$  and  $Q$  whose position vectors are  $(2\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b})$  and  $(\mathbf{a} - 3\mathbf{b})$  externally in the ratio  $1 : 2$ . Also, show that  $P$  is the mid point of the line segment  $RQ$ .

**Solution:**

$$\mathbf{R} = \frac{\mathbf{Q} - 2\mathbf{P}}{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (2.2.12.1)$$

$$\frac{(\mathbf{R} + \mathbf{Q})}{2} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{P}. \quad (2.2.12.2)$$

See Fig. 2.2.12.1.



Fig. 2.2.12.1

2.2.13 The point which divides the line segment joining the points  $P(7, -6)$  and  $Q(3, 4)$  in the ratio  $1 : 2$  internally lies in the

- I quadrant
- II quadrant
- III quadrant

d) IV quadrant

2.2.14 If the point  $P(2,1)$  lies on the line segment joining points  $A(4,2)$  and  $B(8,4)$ , then

- a)  $AP = \frac{1}{3}AB$
- b)  $AP = PE$
- c)  $PB = \frac{1}{3}AB$
- d)  $AP = \frac{1}{2}AB$

2.2.15 If  $P^a_3$  is the mid-point of the line segment joining the points  $Q(-6,5)$  and  $R(-2,3)$ , then the value of  $a$  is

- a)  $-4$
- b)  $-12$
- c)  $12$
- d)  $-6$

2.2.16 A line intersects the y-axis and x-axis of the points  $P$  and  $Q$ , respectively. If  $(2,5)$  is the mid-point of  $PQ$ , then the coordinates of  $P$  and  $Q$  are, respectively

- a)  $(0,-5)$  and  $(2,0)$
- b)  $(0,-10)$  and  $(-4,0)$
- c)  $(0,4)$  and  $(-10,0)$
- d)  $(0,-10)$  and  $(4,0)$

2.2.17 Point  $P(5,-3)$  is one of the two points of trisection of line segment joining the points  $A(7,-2)$  and  $B(1,-5)$

2.2.18 Points  $A(-6,10)$ ,  $B(-4,6)$  and  $C(3,-8)$  are collinear such that  $AB = \frac{2}{9}AC$

2.2.19 In what ratio does the x-axis divide the line segment joining the points  $(-4,-6)$  and  $(-1,7)$ ? Find the coordinates of the point of division.

2.2.20 Find the ratio in which the point  $P(\frac{3}{4}, \frac{5}{12})$  divides the line segment joining the points  $A(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2})$  and  $B(2,-5)$ .

2.2.21 If  $P(9a-2, -b)$  divides line segment joining  $A(3a+1, -3)$  and  $B(8a,5)$  in the ratio 3:1, find the values of  $a$  and  $b$ .

2.2.22 The line segment joining the points  $A(3,2)$  and  $B(5,1)$  is divided at the point  $P$  in the ratio 1:2 which lies on  $3x-18y+k=0$ . Find the value of  $k$ .

2.2.23 Find the coordinates of the point  $R$  on the line segment joining the points  $P(-1,3)$  and  $Q(2,5)$  such that  $PR = \frac{3}{5}PQ$ .

2.2.24 Find the ratio in which the line  $2x+3y-5=0$  divides the line segment joining the points  $(8,-9)$  and  $(2,1)$ . Also find the coordinates of the point of division,

2.2.25 If  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$  are the position vectors of  $A$  and  $B$ , respectively, find the position vector of a point  $C$  in  $BA$  produced such that  $BC=1.5BA$ .

2.2.26 The position vector of the point which divides the join of points  $2\mathbf{a}-3\mathbf{b}$  and  $\mathbf{a}+\mathbf{b}$  in the ratio 3:1 is

- a)  $\frac{3\mathbf{a}-2\mathbf{b}}{2}$
- b)  $\frac{7\mathbf{a}-8\mathbf{b}}{4}$
- c)  $\frac{3\mathbf{a}}{4}$
- d)  $\frac{5\mathbf{a}}{4}$

2.2.27 Find the ratio in which the line segment joining  $A(1,-5)$  and  $B(-4,5)$  is divided by the x-axis. Also find the coordinates of the point of division.

2.2.28 Find the position vector of a point  $R$  which divides the line joining two points  $P$  and  $Q$  whose position vectors are  $2\mathbf{a}+\mathbf{b}$  and  $\mathbf{a}-3\mathbf{b}$  externally in the ratio 1:2.

## 2.3 Rank

2.3.1 By using the concept of equation of a line, prove that the three points  $(3,0)$ ,  $(-2,-2)$  and  $(8,2)$  are collinear.

**Solution:** The collinearity matrix can be expressed as

$$\begin{pmatrix} -5 & -2 \\ 5 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_2 \leftarrow -R_1 + R_2} \begin{pmatrix} -5 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.3.1.1)$$

which is a rank 1 matrix. See Fig. 2.3.1.1.

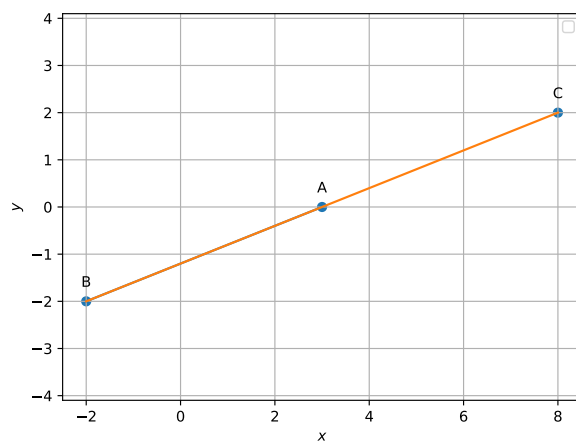


Fig. 2.3.1.1

2.3.2 Determine if the points  $(1,5)$ ,  $(2,3)$  and  $(-2,-11)$  are collinear.

**Solution:** Use (1.5.6).

2.3.3 Show that the points  $A(1,2,7)$ ,  $B(2,6,3)$  and  $C(3,10,-1)$  are collinear.

**Solution:**

2.3.4 Show that the vectors  $2\hat{i} - 3\hat{j} + 4\hat{k}$  and  $-4\hat{i} + 6\hat{j} - 8\hat{k}$  are collinear.

**Solution:**

2.3.5 Show that the points  $(2,3,4)$ ,  $(-1,-2,1)$ ,  $(5,8,7)$  are collinear.

**Solution:**

2.3.6 In each of the following, find the value of ' $k$ ', for which the points are collinear.

- a)  $(7,-2)$ ,  $(5,1)$ ,  $(3,k)$
- b)  $(8,1)$ ,  $(k,-4)$ ,  $(2,-5)$

**Solution:**

2.3.7 Find a relation between  $x$  and  $y$  if the points  $(x,y)$ ,  $(1,2)$  and  $(7,0)$  are collinear.

**Solution:**

2.3.8 If three points  $(x,-1)$ ,  $(2,1)$  and  $(4,5)$  are collinear, find the value of  $x$ .

2.3.9 If three points  $(h,0)$ ,  $(a,b)$  and  $(0,k)$  lie on a line, show that

$$\frac{a}{h} + \frac{b}{k} = 1 \quad (2.3.9.1)$$

2.3.10 Show that the points  $A(1,-2,-8)$ ,  $B(5,0,-2)$  and  $C(11,3,7)$  are collinear, and find the ratio in which  $B$



divides AC.

2.3.11 If the points  $A(1, 2)$ ,  $O(0, 0)$  and  $C(a, b)$  are collinear, then

- a)  $a=b$
- b)  $a=2b$
- c)  $2a=b$
- d)  $a=-b$

True/false

2.12  $\triangle ABC$  with vertices  $A(-2, 0)$ ,  $B(2, 0)$  and  $C(0, 2)$  is similar to  $\triangle DEF$  with vertices  $D(-4, 0)$ ,  $E(4, 0)$  and  $F(0, 4)$

2.13 Point  $(-4, 2)$  lies on the line segment joining the points  $A(-4, 6)$  and  $B(-4, -6)$

2.14 The points  $(0, 5)$ ,  $(0, -9)$  and  $(3, 6)$  are collinear

2.15 Points  $A(3, 1)$ ,  $B(12, -2)$  and  $C(0, 2)$  cannot be the vertices of a triangle

2.16 Find the value of  $m$  if the points  $(5, 1)$ ,  $(-2, -3)$  and  $(8, 2m)$  are collinear.

2.17 Find the values of  $k$  if the points  $A(k+1, 2k)$ ,  $B(3k, 2k+3)$  and  $C(5k-1, 5k)$  are collinear

2.18 Using vectors, find the value of  $k$  such that the points  $(k, -10, 3)$ ,  $(1, -1, 3)$  and  $(3, 5, 3)$  are collinear.

2.19 The points  $A(2, 1)$ ,  $B(0, 5)$ ,  $C(-1, 2)$  are collinear.

## 2.4 Length

2.4.1 Compute the magnitude of the following vectors:

$$\mathbf{a} = \hat{i} + \hat{j} + \hat{k} \quad (2.4.1.1)$$

$$\mathbf{b} = 2\hat{i} - 7\hat{j} - 3\hat{k} \quad (2.4.1.2)$$

$$\mathbf{c} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\hat{i} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\hat{j} - \frac{1}{3}\hat{k} \quad (2.4.1.3)$$

**Solution:** Let

$$\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -7 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{c} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \\ -\frac{1}{3} \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.4.1.4)$$

Then

$$\|\mathbf{a}\| = \sqrt{\mathbf{a}^T \mathbf{a}} = \sqrt{3}, \quad (2.4.1.5)$$

$$\|\mathbf{b}\| = \sqrt{\mathbf{b}^T \mathbf{b}} = \sqrt{62}, \quad (2.4.1.6)$$

$$\|\mathbf{c}\| = \sqrt{\mathbf{c}^T \mathbf{c}} = 1 \quad (2.4.1.7)$$

2.4.2 Find the value of  $x$  for which  $x(\hat{i} + \hat{j} + \hat{k})$  is a unit vector.

**Solution:**

$$\because \mathbf{x} = x \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \|\mathbf{x}\| = 1 \implies x\sqrt{3} = 1 \quad (2.4.2.1)$$

$$\text{or, } x = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \quad (2.4.2.2)$$

2.4.3 If  $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}$ , then is it true that  $|\mathbf{a}| = |\mathbf{b}| + |\mathbf{c}|$ ? Justify your answer.

**Solution:** Let

$$\mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{c} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.4.3.1)$$

Then

$$\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.4.3.2)$$

$$\implies \|\mathbf{a}\| = \sqrt{11}, \|\mathbf{b}\| = \sqrt{14}, \|\mathbf{c}\| = 3. \quad (2.4.3.3)$$

Thus

$$\|\mathbf{a}\| \neq \|\mathbf{b}\| + \|\mathbf{c}\| \quad (2.4.3.4)$$

2.4.4 If  $\vec{a}$  is a nonzero vector of magnitude 'a' and  $\lambda$  a nonzero scalar, then  $\lambda\vec{a}$  is a unit vector if

- a)  $\lambda = 1$
- b)  $\lambda = -1$
- c)  $a = |\lambda|$
- d)  $a = 1/|\lambda|$

2.4.5 A vector  $\mathbf{r}$  is inclined at equal angles to the three axis. If the magnitude of  $\mathbf{r}$  is  $2\sqrt{3}$  units, find  $\mathbf{r}$ .

2.4.6 Find the unit vector in the direction of sum of vectors  $\mathbf{a} = 2\hat{i} - \hat{j} + \hat{k}$  and  $\mathbf{b} = 2\hat{j} + \hat{k}$ .

2.4.7 If  $\mathbf{a} = \hat{i} + \hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$  and  $\mathbf{b} = 2\hat{i} + \hat{j} - 2\hat{k}$ , find the unit vector in the direction of

- a)  $6\mathbf{a}$
- b)  $2\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}$

2.4.8 Find a unit vector in the direction of  $\overline{PQ}$ , where P and Q have co-ordinates  $(5, 0, 8)$  and  $(3, 3, 2)$ , respectively.

2.4.9 The vector in the direction of the vector  $\hat{i} - 2\hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$  that has magnitude 9 is

- a)  $\hat{i} - 2\hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$
- b)  $\hat{i} - 2\hat{j}$
- c)  $3(\hat{i} - 2\hat{j} + 2\hat{k})$
- d)  $9(\hat{i} - 2\hat{j} + 2\hat{k})$

2.4.10 If  $|\mathbf{a}| = 4$  and  $-3 \leq \lambda \leq 2$ , then the range of  $|\lambda\mathbf{a}|$  is

- a)  $[0, 8]$
- b)  $[-12, 8]$
- c)  $[0, 12]$
- d)  $[8, 12]$

2.4.11 The values of  $k$  for which  $|\mathbf{ka}| < |\mathbf{a}|$  and  $\mathbf{ka} + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{a}$  is parallel to  $\mathbf{a}$  holds true are \_\_\_\_\_.

2.4.12 If  $|\mathbf{a}| = |\mathbf{b}|$ , then necessarily it implies  $\mathbf{a} = \pm\mathbf{b}$ .

2.4.13 The direction cosines of the vector  $(2\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} - \hat{k})$  are \_\_\_\_\_.

2.4.14 Position vector of point P is a vector whose initial point is origin.

## 2.5 Direction

2.5.1 Find the slope of a line, which passes through the origin and the mid point of the line segment joining the points  $P(0, -4)$  and  $B(8, 0)$ .

**Solution:** The mid point of  $PB$  is

$$\mathbf{M} = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{P} + \mathbf{B}) = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.5.1.1)$$

which is equal to the direction vector of  $OM$ .

$$\therefore \mathbf{M} \equiv \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}, m = -\frac{1}{2} \quad (2.5.1.2)$$

which is the desired slope. See Fig. 2.5.1.1.



Fig. 2.5.1.1

- 2.5.2 A line passes through  $A(x_1, y_1)$  and  $B(h, k)$ . If slope of the line is  $m$ , show that  $(k - y_1) = m(h - x_1)$ .

**Solution:** The direction vector

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} h - x_1 \\ k - y_1 \end{pmatrix} \equiv \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \frac{k - y_1}{h - x_1} \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.5.2.1)$$

- 2.5.3 Show that the line through the points  $(4, 7, 8), (2, 3, 4)$  is parallel to the line through the points  $(-1, -2, 1), (1, 2, 5)$ .

**Solution:**

$$\begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 7 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \equiv \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.5.3.1)$$

which means that the given lines have the same direction vector and are hence parallel.

- 2.5.4 For given vectors,  $\mathbf{a} = 2\hat{i} - \hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$  and  $\mathbf{b} = -\hat{i} + \hat{j} - \hat{k}$ , find the unit vector in the direction of the vector  $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$ .

**Solution:**

$$\therefore \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (2.5.4.1)$$

$$\|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}\| = \sqrt{2} \quad (2.5.4.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}}{\|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}\|} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.5.4.3)$$

which is the desired the unit vector.

- 2.5.5 Find a vector of magnitude 5 units, and parallel to the

resultant of the vectors  $\mathbf{a} = 2\hat{i} + 3\hat{j} - \hat{k}$  and  $\mathbf{b} = \hat{i} - 2\hat{j} + \hat{k}$ .

- 2.5.6 If  $\mathbf{a} = \hat{i} + \hat{j} + \hat{k}$ ,  $\mathbf{b} = 2\hat{i} - \hat{j} + 3\hat{k}$  and  $\mathbf{c} = \hat{i} - 2\hat{j} + \hat{k}$ , find a unit vector parallel to the vector  $2\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b} + 3\mathbf{c}$ .

**Solution:**

$$2\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b} + 3\mathbf{c} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow \frac{2\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b} + 3\mathbf{c}}{\|2\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b} + 3\mathbf{c}\|} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{22}} \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.5.6.1)$$

- 2.5.7 Find a vector in the direction of vector  $5\hat{i} - \hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$  which has magnitude 8 units.

**Solution:** Let the required vector be

$$c \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (2.5.7.1)$$

From the given information,

$$\left\| c \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \right\| = 8 \quad (2.5.7.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow |c| = \frac{4\sqrt{30}}{15} \quad (2.5.7.3)$$

- 2.5.8 Find the unit vector in the direction of the vector  $\mathbf{a} = \hat{i} + \hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$ .

- 2.5.9 Find the unit vector in the direction of vector  $\overrightarrow{PQ}$ , where  $\mathbf{P}$  and  $\mathbf{Q}$  are the points  $(1, 2, 3)$  and  $(4, 5, 6)$ , respectively.

- 2.5.10 Find a vector of magnitude 5 units, and parallel to the resultant of the vectors  $\mathbf{a} = 2\hat{i} + 3\hat{j} - \hat{k}$  and  $\mathbf{b} = \hat{i} - 2\hat{j} + \hat{k}$ .

**Solution:**

$$\therefore \mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.5.10.1)$$

$$\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow \|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}\| = \sqrt{10} \quad (2.5.10.2)$$

From problem 2.5.4, the unit vector in the direction of  $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$  is

$$\frac{\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}}{\|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}\|} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{10}} \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.5.10.3)$$

The desired vector can then be expressed as

$$\pm \frac{5}{\sqrt{10}} \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.5.10.4)$$

- 2.5.11 If a line makes angles  $90^\circ, 135^\circ, 45^\circ$  with x, y and z-axis respectively. Find its direction cosines.

**Solution:** The direction vector is

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos 90^\circ \\ \cos 135^\circ \\ \cos 45^\circ \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.5.11.1)$$

- 2.5.12 Find the direction cosines of the vector joining the points  $\mathbf{A}(1, 2, -3)$  and  $\mathbf{B}(-1, -2, 1)$ , directed from  $\mathbf{A}$  to  $\mathbf{B}$ .

**Solution:** The unit vector in the direction of AB is

$$\frac{\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}}{\|\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}\|} = \frac{1}{3} \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.5.12.1)$$

and the direction cosines are the elements of the above vector.

2.5.13 Show that the vector  $\hat{i} + \hat{j} + \hat{k}$  is equally inclined to the axes OX, OY and OZ.

**Solution:** Since all entries of the given vector

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.5.13.1)$$

are equal, it is equally inclined to the axes.

2.5.14 If a line has the direction ratios  $-18, 12, -4$ , then what are its direction cosines?

**Solution:** Let

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -18 \\ 12 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.5.14.1)$$

Then the unit direction vector of the line is

$$\frac{\mathbf{A}}{\|\mathbf{A}\|} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{-9}{11} \\ \frac{6}{11} \\ \frac{-2}{11} \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.5.14.2)$$

2.5.15 Find the direction cosines of the sides of a triangle whose

vertices are  $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}$ ,  $\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$  and  $\begin{pmatrix} -5 \\ -5 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$ .

**Solution:** Let the vertices be

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} -5 \\ -5 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.5.15.1)$$

The direction vectors of the sides are,

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \\ -6 \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{m}_1, \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{m}_2, \quad (2.5.15.2)$$

$$\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -8 \\ -10 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{m}_3, \quad (2.5.15.3)$$

The corresponding unit vectors are then obtained as

$$\begin{pmatrix} \frac{2}{\sqrt{17}} \\ \frac{2}{\sqrt{17}} \\ \frac{-3}{\sqrt{17}} \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} \frac{2}{\sqrt{17}} \\ \frac{3}{\sqrt{17}} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{17}} \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} \frac{-4}{\sqrt{42}} \\ \frac{-5}{\sqrt{42}} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{42}} \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.5.15.4)$$

2.5.16 Find the direction cosines of the vector  $\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + 3\hat{k}$ .

**Solution:** The unit vector in the direction of the given vector is

$$\mathbf{A} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{14}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.5.16.1)$$

2.5.17 Find the direction cosines of a line which makes equal angles with the coordinate axes.

**Solution:** Let  $\alpha$  be the angle made by the line with the axes. The unit direction vector can be expressed as

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \alpha \\ \cos \alpha \\ \cos \alpha \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow \|\mathbf{x}\| = 1 \quad (2.5.17.1)$$

$$\text{or, } \cos \alpha = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \quad (2.5.17.2)$$

Thus the unit direction vector of the given line is

$$\mathbf{x} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.5.17.3)$$

2.5.18 Write down a unit vector in XY-plane, making an angle of  $30^\circ$  with the positive direction of x-axis.

2.5.19 the unit vector normal to the plane  $x + 2y + 3z - 6 = 0$  is  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{14}}\hat{i} + \frac{2}{\sqrt{14}}\hat{j} + \frac{3}{\sqrt{14}}\hat{k}$ .

## 2.6 Scalar Product

2.6.1 Find the angle between two vectors  $\vec{a}$  and  $\vec{b}$  with magnitudes  $\sqrt{3}$  and 2 respectively having  $\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b} = \sqrt{6}$ .

**Solution:** From the given information,

$$\|\mathbf{a}\| = \sqrt{3}, \|\mathbf{b}\| = 2, \mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{b} = \sqrt{6} \quad (2.6.1.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow \cos \theta = \frac{\mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{b}}{\|\mathbf{a}\| \|\mathbf{b}\|} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \quad (2.6.1.2)$$

$$\text{or, } \theta = 45^\circ \quad (2.6.1.3)$$

2.6.2 Find the angle between the the vectors  $\hat{i} - 2\hat{j} + 3\hat{k}$  and  $3\hat{i} - 2\hat{j} + \hat{k}$ .

**Solution:** Let

$$\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (2.6.2.1)$$

From problem 2.6.1,

$$\cos \theta = \frac{\mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{b}}{\|\mathbf{a}\| \|\mathbf{b}\|} = \frac{10}{\sqrt{14} \times \sqrt{14}} = \frac{5}{7} \quad (2.6.2.2)$$

2.6.3 Find  $|\vec{a}|$  and  $|\vec{b}|$ , if  $(\vec{a} + \vec{b}) \cdot (\vec{a} - \vec{b}) = 8$  and  $|\vec{a}| = 8|\vec{b}|$ .

**Solution:**

$$\because (\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b})^\top (\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}) = 8, \|\mathbf{a}\| = 8\|\mathbf{b}\|, \quad (2.6.3.1)$$

$$\|\mathbf{a}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{b}\|^2 = 8 \quad (2.6.3.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow \|8\mathbf{b}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{b}\|^2 = 8 \quad (2.6.3.3)$$

$$\Rightarrow \|\mathbf{b}\| = \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3\sqrt{7}} \quad (2.6.3.4)$$

Thus,

$$\|\mathbf{a}\| = 8\|\mathbf{b}\| = \frac{16\sqrt{2}}{3\sqrt{7}} \quad (2.6.3.5)$$

2.6.4 Evaluate the product  $(3\vec{a} - 5\vec{b}) \cdot (2\vec{a} + 7\vec{b})$ .

**Solution:**

$$(3\mathbf{a} - 5\mathbf{b})^\top (2\mathbf{a} + 7\mathbf{b}) = 3\mathbf{a}^\top (2\mathbf{a} + 7\mathbf{b}) - 5\mathbf{b}^\top (2\mathbf{a} + 7\mathbf{b}) \\ = 6\|\mathbf{a}\|^2 - 35\|\mathbf{b}\|^2 + 11\mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{b} \quad (2.6.4.1)$$

2.6.5 Find the magnitude of two vectors  $\vec{a}$  and  $\vec{b}$ , having the same magnitude and such that the angle between them is  $60^\circ$  and their scalar product is  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

**Solution:** Given

$$\|\mathbf{a}\| = \|\mathbf{b}\|, \cos \theta = \frac{1}{2}, \mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{b} = \frac{1}{2}, \quad (2.6.5.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{1}{2} = \frac{\frac{1}{2}}{\|\mathbf{a}\|^2} \Rightarrow \|\mathbf{a}\| = \|\mathbf{b}\| = 1 \quad (2.6.5.2)$$

by using the definition of the scalar product.

2.6.6 Find  $|\vec{x}|$ , if for a unit vector  $\vec{a}$ ,  $(\vec{x} - \vec{a}) \cdot (\vec{x} + \vec{a}) = 12$ .

**Solution:** From the given information,

$$(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{a})^\top (\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{a}) = 12 \quad (2.6.6.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow \|\mathbf{x}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{a}\|^2 = 12 \quad (2.6.6.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow \|\mathbf{x}\| = \sqrt{13} \quad (2.6.6.3)$$

2.6.7 If the vertices  $A, B, C$  of a triangle  $ABC$  are  $(1, 2, 3)$ ,  $(-1, 0, 0)$ ,  $(0, 1, 2)$ , respectively, then find  $\angle ABC$ .

**Solution:** From the given information,

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.6.7.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow \angle ABC = \cos^{-1} \frac{(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B})^\top (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B})}{\|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}\| \|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B}\|} \quad (2.6.7.2)$$

$$= \cos^{-1} \frac{10}{\sqrt{102}} \quad (2.6.7.3)$$

$$(2.6.7.4)$$

2.6.8 Find a unit vector perpendicular to each of the vector  $\vec{a} + \vec{b}$  and  $\vec{a} - \vec{b}$ , where  $\vec{a} = 3\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$  and  $\vec{b} = \hat{i} + 2\hat{j} - 2\hat{k}$ .

**Solution:** Let the desired vector be  $\mathbf{x}$ . Then,

$$(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} \quad \mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b})^\top \mathbf{x} = 0 \quad (2.6.8.1)$$

$$(2.6.8.2)$$

$$\therefore \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} = (\mathbf{a} \quad \mathbf{b}) \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.6.8.3)$$

$$\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b} = (\mathbf{a} \quad \mathbf{b}) \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (2.6.8.4)$$

(2.6.8.2) can be expressed as

$$\left\{ (\mathbf{a} \quad \mathbf{b}) \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \right\}^\top \mathbf{x} = 0 \quad (2.6.8.5)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}^\top (\mathbf{a} \quad \mathbf{b})^\top \mathbf{x} = 0 \quad (2.6.8.6)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}^\top (\mathbf{a} \quad \mathbf{b})^\top \mathbf{x} = 0 \quad (2.6.8.7)$$

$$\text{or, } (\mathbf{a} \quad \mathbf{b})^\top \mathbf{x} = 0 \quad (2.6.8.8)$$

which can be expressed as

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow[R_2 = \frac{R_2}{4}]{R_2 = 3R_2 - R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.6.8.9)$$

$$\xrightarrow[R_1 = \frac{R_1}{3}]{R_1 = R_1 - 2R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.6.8.10)$$

yielding

$$\begin{matrix} x_1 + 2x_3 = 0 \\ x_2 - 2x_3 = 0 \end{matrix} \Rightarrow \mathbf{x} = x_3 \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.6.8.11)$$

Thus, the desired unit vector is

$$\mathbf{x} = \frac{1}{3} \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.6.8.12)$$

2.6.9 If a unit vector  $\vec{a}$  makes angles  $\frac{\pi}{3}$  with  $\hat{i}$ ,  $\frac{\pi}{4}$  with  $\hat{j}$  and an acute angle  $\theta$  with  $\hat{k}$ , then find  $\theta$  and hence, the components of  $\vec{a}$ .

**Solution:** From the given information,

$$\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \frac{\pi}{3} \\ \cos \frac{\pi}{4} \\ \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.6.9.1)$$

$$\therefore \|\mathbf{a}\| = 1, \quad (2.6.9.2)$$

$$\frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{2} + \cos^2 \theta = 1 \quad (2.6.9.3)$$

$$\Rightarrow \cos \theta = \frac{1}{2} \quad (2.6.9.4)$$

$\therefore \theta$  is an acute angle. Hence

$$\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.6.9.5)$$

2.6.10 If  $\theta$  is the angle between two vectors  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$ , then  $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} \geq 0$  only when

a)  $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$

b)  $0 \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$

c)  $0 < \theta < \pi$

d)  $0 \leq \theta \leq \pi$

**Solution:**

$$\therefore \mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{b} = \cos \theta \|\mathbf{a}\| \|\mathbf{b}\|, \quad (2.6.10.1)$$

$$\mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{b} \geq 0 \Rightarrow \cos \theta \geq 0 \quad (2.6.10.2)$$

$$\therefore 0 \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{3\pi}{2} \leq \theta \leq 2\pi. \quad (2.6.10.3)$$

2.6.11 Find the angle between x-axis and the line joining points  $(3, -1)$  and  $(4, -2)$ .

**Solution:** The direction vector of the given line is

$$\mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.6.11.1)$$

Hence, the desired angle is given by

$$\cos \theta = \frac{\mathbf{C}^T \mathbf{e}_1}{\|\mathbf{C}\| \|\mathbf{e}_1\|} = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \quad (2.6.11.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow \theta = 135^\circ \quad (2.6.11.3)$$

2.6.12 The slope of a line is double of the slope of another line. If tangent of the angle between them is  $1/3$ , find the slopes of the lines.

**Solution:** The direction vectors of the lines can be expressed as

$$\mathbf{m}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ m \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{m}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2m \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.6.12.1)$$

If the angle between the lines be  $\theta$ ,

$$\tan \theta = \frac{1}{3} \Rightarrow \cos \theta = \frac{3}{\sqrt{10}} \quad (2.6.12.2)$$

Thus,

$$\frac{3}{\sqrt{10}} = \frac{\mathbf{m}_1^T \mathbf{m}_2}{\|\mathbf{m}_1\| \|\mathbf{m}_2\|} \quad (2.6.12.3)$$

$$= \frac{2m^2 + 1}{\sqrt{m^2 + 1} \sqrt{4m^2 + 1}} \quad (2.6.12.4)$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{9}{10} = \frac{4m^4 + 4m^2 + 1}{4m^4 + 5m^2 + 1}$$

$$\text{or, } 4m^4 - 5m^2 + 1 = 0$$

yielding

$$m = \pm \frac{1}{2}, \pm 1 \quad (2.6.12.7)$$

2.6.13 Find angle between the lines,  $\sqrt{3}x + y = 1$  and  $x + \sqrt{3}y = 1$ .

**Solution:** From the given equations, the normal vectors can be expressed as

$$\mathbf{n}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{3} \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{n}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \sqrt{3} \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.6.13.1)$$

The angle between the lines can then be expressed as

$$\cos \theta = \frac{\mathbf{n}_1^T \mathbf{n}_2}{\|\mathbf{n}_1\| \|\mathbf{n}_2\|} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \quad (2.6.13.2)$$

$$\text{or, } \theta = 30^\circ \quad (2.6.13.3)$$

2.6.14 The scalar product of the vector  $\hat{i} + \hat{j} + \hat{k}$  with a unit vector along the sum of vectors  $2\hat{i} + 4\hat{j} - 5\hat{k}$  and  $\lambda\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + 3\hat{k}$  is equal to one. Find the value of  $\lambda$ .

2.6.15 Let  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$  be two unit vectors and  $\theta$  is the angle between them. Then  $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$  is a unit vector if

- a)  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$
- b)  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{3}$
- c)  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$
- d)  $\theta = \frac{2\pi}{3}$

2.6.16 If  $\theta$  is the angle between any two vectors  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$ , then  $|\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}| = |\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}|$  when  $\theta$  is equal to

- a) 0
- b)  $\frac{\pi}{4}$
- c)  $\frac{\pi}{2}$
- d)  $\pi$

2.6.17 A vector  $\mathbf{r}$  has a magnitude 14 and direction ratios 2, 3, -6. Find the direction cosines and components of  $\mathbf{r}$ , given that  $\mathbf{r}$  makes an acute angle with x-axis.

2.6.18 Find the angle between the vectors  $2\hat{i} - \hat{j} + \hat{k}$  and  $3\hat{i} + 4\hat{j} - \hat{k}$ .

2.6.19 If  $\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}, \mathbf{c}$  are the three vectors such that  $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c} = 0$  and  $|\mathbf{a}| = 2, |\mathbf{b}| = 3, |\mathbf{c}| = 5$ , the value of  $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{c} \cdot \mathbf{a}$  is

- a) 0
- b) 1
- c) -19
- d) 38

2.6.20 If  $\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}, \mathbf{c}$  are unit vectors such that  $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c} = 0$ , then the value of  $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{c} \cdot \mathbf{a}$  is

- a) 1
- b) 3
- c)  $-\frac{3}{2}$
- d) None of these

2.6.21 The angles between two vectors  $\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}$  with magnitude  $\sqrt{3}, 4$  respectively, and  $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 2\sqrt{3}$  is

- a)  $\frac{\pi}{6}$
- b)  $\frac{\pi}{3}$
- c)  $\frac{\pi}{2}$
- d)  $\frac{5\pi}{2}$

2.6.22 The vector  $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$  bisects the angle between the non-collinear vectors  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$  if \_\_\_\_\_.

2.6.23 The vectors  $\mathbf{a} = 3\hat{i} - 2\hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$  and  $\mathbf{b} = \hat{i} - 2\hat{k}$  are the adjacent sides of a parallelogram. The acute angle between its diagonals is \_\_\_\_\_.

2.6.24 If  $\mathbf{a}$  is any non-zero vector, then  $(\mathbf{a} \cdot \hat{i})\hat{i} + (\mathbf{a} \cdot \hat{j})\hat{j} + (\mathbf{a} \cdot \hat{k})\hat{k}$  equals \_\_\_\_\_.

2.6.25 If  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$  are adjacent sides of a rhombus, then  $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 0$ .

2.6.26 Find the angle between the lines

$$\vec{r} = 3\hat{i} - 2\hat{j} + 6\hat{k} + \lambda(2\hat{i} + \hat{j} + 2\hat{k}) \quad (2.6.26.1)$$

$$\vec{r} = (2\hat{j} - 5\hat{k}) + \mu(6\hat{i} + 3\hat{j} + 2\hat{k}) \quad (2.6.26.2)$$

2.6.27 Find the angle between the lines whose direction cosines are given by the equations  $l + m + n = 0, l^2 + m^2 - n^2 = 0$ .

2.6.28 If a variable line in two adjacent positions has directions cosines  $l, m, n$  and  $l + \delta l, m + \delta m, n + \delta n$ , show that the small angle  $\delta\theta$  between the two positions is given by

$$\delta\theta^2 = \delta l^2 + \delta m^2 + \delta n^2 \quad (2.6.28.1)$$

2.6.29 The sine of the angle between the straight line  $\frac{x-2}{3} = \frac{y-3}{4} = \frac{z-4}{5}$  and the plane  $2x - 2y + z = 5$  is

- a)  $\frac{10}{6\sqrt{5}}$
- b)  $\frac{5\sqrt{2}}{2\sqrt{3}}$
- c)  $\frac{5}{\sqrt{2}}$
- d)  $\frac{10}{5}$

2.6.30 The plane  $2x - 3y + 6z - 11 = 0$  makes an angle  $\sin^{-1}(\alpha)$  with x-axis. The value of  $\alpha$  is equal to

- a)  $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

- b)  $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{3}$   
 c)  $\frac{2}{7}$   
 d)  $\frac{3}{7}$

2.6.31 The angle between the line  $\vec{r} = (5\hat{i} - \hat{j} - 4\hat{k}) + \lambda(2\hat{i} - \hat{j} + \hat{k})$  and the plane  $\vec{r} \cdot (3\hat{i} - 4\hat{j} - \hat{k}) + 5 = 0$  is  $\sin^{-1}\left(\frac{5}{2\sqrt{91}}\right)$ .

2.6.32 The angle between the planes  $\vec{r} \cdot (2\hat{i} - 3\hat{j} + \hat{k}) = 1$  and  $\vec{r} \cdot (\hat{i} - \hat{j}) = 4$  is  $\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{-5}{\sqrt{58}}\right)$ .

2.6.33 Let  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$  be two unit vectors and  $\theta$  is the angle between them. Then  $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$  is a unit vector if

- a)  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$   
 b)  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{3}$   
 c)  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$   
 d)  $\theta = \frac{2\pi}{3}$

2.6.34 The value of  $\hat{i} \cdot (\hat{j} \times \hat{k}) + \hat{j} \cdot (\hat{i} \times \hat{k}) + \hat{k} \cdot (\hat{i} \times \hat{j})$  is

- a) 0  
 b) -1  
 c) 1  
 d) 3

2.6.35 If  $\theta$  is the angle between any two vectors  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$ , then  $|\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}| = |\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}|$  when  $\theta$  is equal to

- a) 0  
 b)  $\frac{\pi}{4}$   
 c)  $\frac{\pi}{2}$   
 d)  $\pi$

2.6.36 Let  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$  be two unit vectors and  $\theta$  the angle between them. Then  $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$  is a unit vector if

- a)  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$   
 b)  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{3}$   
 c)  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$   
 d)  $\theta = \frac{2\pi}{3}$

**Solution:**

$$\because \|\mathbf{a}\| = \|\mathbf{b}\| = 3 \|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}\| = 1,$$

$$\|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}\|^2 = 1^2$$

$$\Rightarrow \|\mathbf{a}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{b}\|^2 + 2\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 1$$

$$\Rightarrow (\|\mathbf{a}\| \|\mathbf{b}\| \cos \theta) = \frac{-1}{2}$$

$$\Rightarrow \cos \theta = \frac{-1}{2}, \text{ or, } \theta = \frac{2\pi}{3}$$

2.6.37 Let  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$  be two unit vectors and  $\theta$  is the angle between them. Then  $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$  is a unit vector if

- a)  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$   
 b)  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{3}$   
 c)  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$   
 d)  $\theta = \frac{2\pi}{3}$

2.6.38 The value of  $\hat{i} \cdot (\hat{j} \times \hat{k}) + \hat{j} \cdot (\hat{i} \times \hat{k}) + \hat{k} \cdot (\hat{i} \times \hat{j})$  is

- a) 0  
 b) -1  
 c) 1  
 d) 3

2.6.39 If  $\theta$  is the angle between any two vectors  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$ , then  $|\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}| = |\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}|$  when  $\theta$  is equal to

- a) 0  
 b)  $\frac{\pi}{4}$   
 c)  $\frac{\pi}{2}$   
 d)  $\pi$

2.6.40 A vector  $\mathbf{r}$  has a magnitude 14 and direction ratios 2, 3, -6. Find the direction cosines and components of  $\mathbf{r}$ , given that  $\mathbf{r}$  makes an acute angle with x-axis.

2.6.41 Find the angle between the vectors  $2\hat{i} - \hat{j} + \hat{k}$  and  $3\hat{i} + 4\hat{j} - \hat{k}$ .

2.6.42 If  $\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}, \mathbf{c}$  are the three vectors such that  $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c} = 0$  and  $|\mathbf{a}| = 2, |\mathbf{b}| = 3, |\mathbf{c}| = 5$ , the value of  $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{c} \cdot \mathbf{a}$  is

- a) 0  
 b) 1  
 c) -19  
 d) 38

2.6.43 If  $\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}, \mathbf{c}$  are unit vectors such that  $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c} = 0$ , then the value of  $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{c} \cdot \mathbf{a}$  is

- a) 1  
 b) 3  
 c)  $-\frac{3}{2}$   
 d) None of these

2.6.44 The angles between two vectors  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$  with magnitude  $\sqrt{3}$  and 4, respectively, and  $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 2\sqrt{3}$  is

- a)  $\frac{\pi}{6}$   
 b)  $\frac{\pi}{3}$   
 c)  $\frac{\pi}{2}$   
 d)  $\frac{5\pi}{2}$

2.6.45 The vector  $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$  bisects the angle between the non-collinear vectors  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$  if \_\_\_\_\_.

2.6.46 The vectors  $\mathbf{a} = 3\hat{i} - 2\hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$  and  $\mathbf{b} = \hat{i} - 2\hat{k}$  are the adjacent sides of a parallelogram. The acute angle between its diagonals is \_\_\_\_\_.

2.6.47 If  $\mathbf{a}$  is any non-zero vector, then  $(\mathbf{a} \cdot \hat{i})\hat{i} + (\mathbf{a} \cdot \hat{j})\hat{j} + (\mathbf{a} \cdot \hat{k})\hat{k}$  equals \_\_\_\_\_.

2.6.48 If  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$  are adjacent sides of a rhombus, then  $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 0$ .

(2.6.36.1) 2.6.49 Find the angle between the lines

$$(2.6.36.2) \quad \vec{r} = 3\hat{i} - 2\hat{j} + 6\hat{k} + \lambda(2\hat{i} + \hat{j} + 2\hat{k}) \text{ and } \vec{r} = (2\hat{j} - 5\hat{k}) + \mu(6\hat{i} + 3\hat{j} + 2\hat{k})$$

(2.6.36.3) 2.6.50 Find the angle between the lines whose direction cosines are given by the equations  $l + m + n = 0, l^2 + m^2 - n^2 = 0$ .

(2.6.36.4) 2.6.51 If a variable line in two adjacent positions has directions cosines  $l, m, n$  and  $l + \delta l, m + \delta m, n + \delta n$ , show that the small angle  $\delta\theta$  between the two positions is given by

$$\delta\theta^2 = \delta l^2 + \delta m^2 + \delta n^2$$

2.6.52 The sine of the angle between the straight line  $\frac{x-2}{3} =$

$$\frac{y-3}{4} = \frac{z-4}{5} \text{ and the plane } 2x - 2y + z = 5 \text{ is}$$

- a)  $\frac{10}{6\sqrt{5}}$   
 b)  $\frac{5\sqrt{2}}{2\sqrt{3}}$   
 c)  $\frac{5}{5}$

d)  $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{10}$

2.6.53 The plane  $2x - 3y + 6z - 11 = 0$  makes an angle  $\sin^{-1}(\alpha)$  with x-axis. The value of  $\alpha$  is equal to

a)  $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

b)  $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{3}$

c)  $\frac{2}{7}$

d)  $\frac{3}{7}$

2.6.54 The angle between the line  $\vec{r} = (5\hat{i} - \hat{j} - 4\hat{k}) + \lambda(2\hat{i} - \hat{j} + \hat{k})$  and the plane  $\vec{r} \cdot (3\hat{i} - 4\hat{j} - \hat{k}) + 5 = 0$  is  $\sin^{-1}\left(\frac{5}{2\sqrt{91}}\right)$ .

2.6.55 The angle between the planes  $\vec{r} \cdot (2\hat{i} - 3\hat{j} + \hat{k}) = 1$  and  $\vec{r} \cdot (\hat{i} - \hat{j}) = 4$  is  $\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{-5}{\sqrt{58}}\right)$ .

2.6.56 Let  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$  be two unit vectors and  $\theta$  is the angle between them. Then  $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$  is a unit vector if

a)  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$

b)  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{3}$

c)  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$

d)  $\theta = \frac{2\pi}{3}$

2.6.57 The value of  $\hat{i} \cdot (\hat{j} \times \hat{k}) + \hat{j} \cdot (\hat{i} \times \hat{k}) + \hat{k} \cdot (\hat{i} \times \hat{j})$  is

a) 0

b) -1

c) 1

d) 3

2.6.58 If  $\theta$  is the angle between any two vectors  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$ , then  $|\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}| = |\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}|$  when  $\theta$  is equal to

a) 0

b)  $\frac{\pi}{4}$

c)  $\frac{\pi}{2}$

d)  $\pi$

2.6.59 Find the angle between the lines  $y(2 - \sqrt{3})(x + 5)$  and  $y = (2 + \sqrt{3})(x - 7)$ .

2.6.60 Show that the tangent of an angle between the lines  $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$  and  $\frac{x}{a} - \frac{y}{b} = 1$  is  $\frac{2ab}{a^2 - b^2}$ .

## 2.7 Formulae

2.7.0.1. Mathematically, the projection of  $\mathbf{A}$  on  $\mathbf{B}$  is defined as

$$\mathbf{C} = k\mathbf{B}, \text{ such that } (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C})^\top \mathbf{C} = 0 \quad (2.7.0.1.1)$$

yielding

$$(\mathbf{A} - k\mathbf{B})^\top \mathbf{B} = 0 \quad (2.7.0.1.2)$$

$$\text{or, } k = \frac{\mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{B}}{\|\mathbf{B}\|^2} \Rightarrow \mathbf{C} = \frac{\mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{B}}{\|\mathbf{B}\|^2} \mathbf{B} \quad (2.7.0.1.3)$$

2.7.0.2. If  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}$  are unit vectors,

$$(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B})^\top (\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B})$$

$$\|\mathbf{A}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{B}\|^2 = 0 \quad (2.7.0.2.1)$$

2.7.0.3. If  $ABCD$  be a parallelogram,

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D} \quad (2.7.0.3.1)$$

2.7.0.4. If  $PQRS$  is formed by joining the mid points of  $ABCD$ ,

$$\mathbf{P} = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}), \mathbf{Q} = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}) \quad (2.7.0.4.1)$$

$$\mathbf{R} = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{C} + \mathbf{D}), \mathbf{S} = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{D} + \mathbf{A}) \quad (2.7.0.4.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{P} - \mathbf{Q} = \mathbf{S} - \mathbf{R}. \quad (2.7.0.4.3)$$

Hence,  $PQRS$  is a parallelogram from (2.7.0.3.1).

2.7.0.5. If

$$\mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{I}, \quad (2.7.0.5.1)$$

then  $\mathbf{A}$  is an *orthogonal* matrix.

## 2.8 Orthogonality

2.8.1 Find the angle between the lines whose direction ratios are  $a, b, c$  and  $b - c, c - a, a - b$ .

**Solution:**

$$\because \begin{pmatrix} a & b & c \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} b - c \\ c - a \\ a - b \end{pmatrix} = 0, \theta = \frac{\pi}{2} \quad (2.8.1.1)$$

2.8.2 Name the type of quadrilateral formed, if any, by the following points, and give reasons for your answer

a)  $A(-1, -2), B(1, 0), C(-1, 2), D(-3, 0)$

b)  $A(-3, 5), B(-3, 1), C(0, 3), D(-1, -4)$

c)  $A(4, 5), B(7, 6), C(4, 3), D(1, 2)$

**Solution:** See Table 2.8.2, Fig. 2.8.2.1, Fig. 2.8.2.2. and Fig. 2.8.2.3. In b), forming the collinearity matrix

$$(\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} \quad \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B}) = \begin{pmatrix} 6 & -3 \\ -4 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_2 \rightarrow R_2 + \frac{2}{3}R_1} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 & -3 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.8.2.1)$$

which is a rank 1 matrix. Hence,  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}, \mathbf{C}$  are collinear.



Fig. 2.8.2.1

2.8.3 Find the projection of the vector  $\hat{i} + 3\hat{j} + 7\hat{k}$  on the vector  $7\hat{i} - \hat{j} + 8\hat{k}$ .

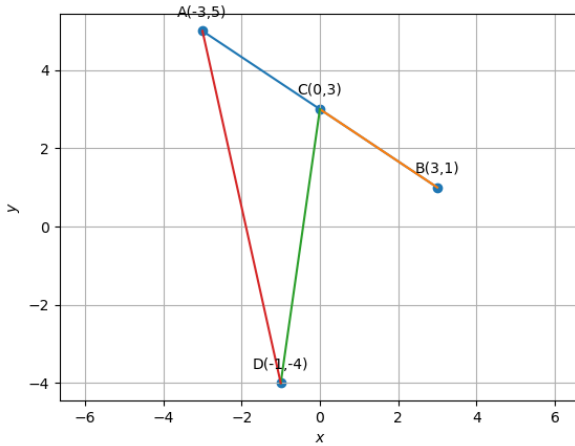


Fig. 2.8.2.2



Fig. 2.8.2.3

	$\mathbf{B}-\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{C}-\mathbf{D}?$	$(\mathbf{B}-\mathbf{A})^T(\mathbf{C}-\mathbf{B}) = 0?$	$(\mathbf{C}-\mathbf{A})^T(\mathbf{D}-\mathbf{B}) = 0$	<b>Geometry</b>
a)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Square
b)	No	-	-	Triangle
c)	Yes	No	No	Parallelogram

TABLE 2.8.2

**Solution:** Let

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ -1 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.8.3.1)$$

The projection of  $\mathbf{A}$  on  $\mathbf{B}$  is defined as the foot of the perpendicular from  $\mathbf{A}$  to  $\mathbf{B}$  and obtained in (2.7.0.1.3). Substituting numerical values,

$$\mathbf{C} = \frac{10}{19} \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ -1 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.8.3.2)$$

2.8.4 Find the projection of the vector  $\hat{i} - \hat{j}$  on the vector  $\hat{i} + \hat{j}$ .

**Solution:** The given points are

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.8.4.1)$$

Since

$$\mathbf{A}^T \mathbf{B} = 0, \quad (2.8.4.2)$$

from (2.7.0.1.3), the projection vector is the origin. See Fig. 2.8.4.1.

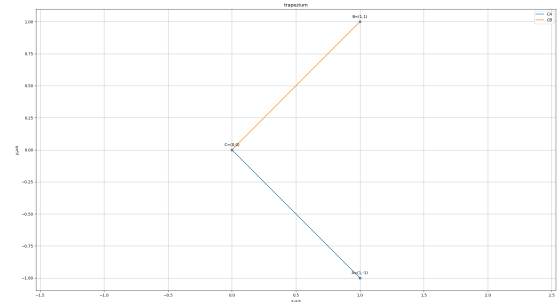


Fig. 2.8.4.1

2.8.5 Show that each of the given three vectors is a unit vector:  $\frac{1}{7}(2\hat{i} + 3\hat{j} + 6\hat{k})$ ,  $\frac{1}{7}(3\hat{i} - 6\hat{j} + 2\hat{k})$ ,  $\frac{1}{7}(6\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} - 3\hat{k})$ . Also, show that they are mutually perpendicular to each other.

**Solution:**

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{2}{7} & \frac{3}{7} & \frac{6}{7} \\ \frac{3}{7} & -\frac{6}{7} & \frac{2}{7} \\ \frac{6}{7} & \frac{2}{7} & -\frac{3}{7} \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.8.5.1)$$

is an orthogonal matrix satisfying (2.7.0.5.1), which verifies the given conditions.

2.8.6 If  $\vec{a} = 2\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + 3\hat{k}$ ,  $\vec{b} = \hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + \hat{k}$  and  $\vec{c} = 3\hat{i} + \hat{j}$  are such that  $\vec{a} + \lambda\vec{b}$  is perpendicular to  $\vec{c}$ , then find the value of  $\lambda$ .

**Solution:**

$$\therefore (\mathbf{a} + \lambda\mathbf{b})^T \mathbf{c} = 0, \quad (2.8.6.1)$$

$$\lambda = -\frac{\mathbf{a}^T \mathbf{c}}{\mathbf{b}^T \mathbf{c}} = 8, \quad (2.8.6.2)$$

upon substituting numerical values.

2.8.7 Show that  $|\vec{a}| |\vec{b}| + |\vec{b}| |\vec{a}|$  is perpendicular to  $|\vec{a}| \vec{b} - |\vec{b}| \vec{a}$ , for any two nonzero vectors  $\vec{a}$  and  $\vec{b}$ .

**Solution:**

$$\|\mathbf{a}\| \mathbf{b} + \|\mathbf{b}\| \mathbf{a} = \|\mathbf{a}\| \|\mathbf{b}\| \left( \frac{\mathbf{b}}{\|\mathbf{b}\|} + \frac{\mathbf{a}}{\|\mathbf{a}\|} \right) \quad (2.8.7.1)$$

$$\|\mathbf{a}\| \mathbf{b} - \|\mathbf{b}\| \mathbf{a} = \|\mathbf{a}\| \|\mathbf{b}\| \left( \frac{\mathbf{b}}{\|\mathbf{b}\|} - \frac{\mathbf{a}}{\|\mathbf{a}\|} \right) \quad (2.8.7.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow (\|\mathbf{a}\| \mathbf{b} + \|\mathbf{b}\| \mathbf{a})^T (\|\mathbf{a}\| \mathbf{b} - \|\mathbf{b}\| \mathbf{a}) = 0 \quad (2.8.7.3)$$

from (2.7.0.2.1).

2.8.8 If  $\vec{a}, \vec{b}, \vec{c}$  are unit vectors such that  $\vec{a} + \vec{b} + \vec{c} = \vec{0}$ , find the value of  $\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b} + \vec{b} \cdot \vec{c} + \vec{c} \cdot \vec{a}$ .



**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \| \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c} \|^2 = 0 \\
 \Rightarrow & \| \mathbf{a} \|^2 + \| \mathbf{b} \|^2 + \| \mathbf{c} \|^2 + 2(\mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{b}^\top \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{c}^\top \mathbf{a}) = 0 \\
 \Rightarrow & 3 + 2(\mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{b}^\top \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{c}^\top \mathbf{a}) = 0 \\
 \Rightarrow & \mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{b}^\top \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{c}^\top \mathbf{a} = -\frac{3}{2} \quad (2.8.8.1)
 \end{aligned}$$

2.8.9 If either vector  $\vec{a} = 0$  or  $\vec{b} = 0$ , then  $\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b} = 0$ . But the converse need not be true. Justify your answer with an example.

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathbf{a} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.8.9.1) \\
 \Rightarrow & \mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{b} = 0 \quad (2.8.9.2)
 \end{aligned}$$

2.8.10 Show that the vectors  $2\hat{i} - \hat{j} + \hat{k}$ ,  $\hat{i} - 3\hat{j} - 5\hat{k}$  and  $3\hat{i} - 4\hat{j} - 4\hat{k}$  from the vertices of a right angled triangle.

**Solution:**

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -4 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (2.8.10.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (2.8.10.2)$$

$$\text{or, } (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C})^\top (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}) = 0 \quad (2.8.10.3)$$

2.8.11 Show that the points A, B and C with position vectors,  $3\hat{i} - 4\hat{j} - 4\hat{k}$ ,  $2\hat{i} - \hat{j} + \hat{k}$  and  $\hat{i} - 3\hat{j} - 5\hat{k}$ , respectively, form the vertices of a right angled triangle.

**Solution:**

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -2 \\ -6 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (2.8.11.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A})^\top (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}) = 0 \quad (2.8.11.2)$$

Hence,  $\triangle ABC$  is right angled at A.

2.8.12 Let  $\mathbf{a} = \hat{i} + 4\hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$ ,  $\mathbf{b} = 3\hat{i} - 2\hat{j} + 7\hat{k}$  and  $\mathbf{c} = 2\hat{i} - \hat{j} + 4\hat{k}$ . Find a vector  $\mathbf{d}$  which is perpendicular to both  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$ , and  $\mathbf{c} \cdot \mathbf{d} = 15$ .

**Solution:** From the given information,

$$\mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{d} = 0 \quad (2.8.12.1)$$

$$\mathbf{b}^\top \mathbf{d} = 0 \quad (2.8.12.2)$$

$$\mathbf{c}^\top \mathbf{d} = 15 \quad (2.8.12.3)$$

yielding

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{a}^\top \\ \mathbf{b}^\top \\ \mathbf{c}^\top \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{d} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 15 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.8.12.4)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 & 2 \\ 3 & -2 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{d} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 15 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.8.12.5)$$

Forming the augmented matrix,

$$\left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 4 & 2 & 0 \\ 3 & -2 & 7 & 0 \\ 2 & -1 & 4 & 15 \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[R_3 \leftarrow R_3 - 2R_1]{R_2 \leftarrow R_2 - 3R_1} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 4 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & -14 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -9 & 0 & 15 \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow{R_3 \leftarrow R_3 - \frac{9}{14}R_2} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 4 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & -14 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -\frac{9}{14} & 15 \end{array} \right) \quad (2.8.12.6)$$

yielding

$$\mathbf{d} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{160}{3} \\ -\frac{5}{3} \\ -\frac{70}{3} \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.8.12.7)$$

upon back substitution.

2.8.13 Prove that  $(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) \cdot (\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) = |\mathbf{a}|^2 + |\mathbf{b}|^2$ , if and only if  $\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}$  are perpendicular, given  $\mathbf{a} \neq \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{b} \neq \mathbf{0}$ .

**Solution:**

$$\because (\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b})^\top (\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) = \|\mathbf{a}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{b}\|^2, \quad (2.8.13.1)$$

$$\|\mathbf{a}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{b}\|^2 + 2\mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{b} = \|\mathbf{a}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{b}\|^2 \quad (2.8.13.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{b} = 0 \quad (2.8.13.3)$$

2.8.14 ABCD is a rectangle formed by the points A(-1,-1), B(-1,4), C(5,4) and D(5,-1). P, Q, R and S are the mid-points of AB, BC, CD and DA respectively. Is the quadrilateral PQRS a square? a rectangle? or a rhombus? Justify your answer.

**Solution:** See Fig. 2.8.14.1. From (2.7.0.4.3), PQRS is a parallelogram.

$$\mathbf{P} = \frac{3}{2}, \mathbf{Q} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{R} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ \frac{3}{2} \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{S} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.8.14.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow (\mathbf{Q} - \mathbf{P})^\top (\mathbf{R} - \mathbf{Q}) \neq 0 \quad (2.8.14.2)$$

$$(\mathbf{R} - \mathbf{P})^\top (\mathbf{S} - \mathbf{Q}) = 0 \quad (2.8.14.3)$$

Therefore PQRS is a rhombus.



Fig. 2.8.14.1

2.8.15 Without using the Baudhayana theorem, show that the

points  $A(4, 4)$ ,  $B(3, 5)$  and  $C(-1, -1)$  are the vertices of a right angled triangle. See Fig. 2.8.15.1.

$$\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -5 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.8.15.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A})^T (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}) = 0 \quad (2.8.15.2)$$

Thus,  $AB \perp AC$ .



Fig. 2.8.15.1

2.8.16 The line through the points  $(h, 3)$  and  $(4, 1)$  intersects the line  $7x - 9y - 19 = 0$  at a right angle. Find the value of  $h$ .

**Solution:** The direction vectors of the given lines are

$$\begin{pmatrix} 4 - h \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 9 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.8.16.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 9 & 7 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 4 - h \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} = 0 \quad (2.8.16.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow h = \frac{22}{9} \quad (2.8.16.3)$$

See Fig. 2.8.16.1.



Fig. 2.8.16.1

In the following cases, determine whether the given planes are parallel or perpendicular, and in case they are neither, find the angles between them.

a)  $7x + 5y + 6z + 30 = 0$  and  $3x - y - 10z + 4 = 0$

b)  $2x + y + 3z - 2 = 0$  and  $x - 2y + 5 = 0$

c)  $2x - 2y + 4z + 5 = 0$  and  $3x - 3y + 6z - 1 = 0$

d)  $2x - y + 3z - 1 = 0$  and  $2x - y + 3z + 3 = 0$

e)  $4x + 8y + z - 8 = 0$  and  $y + z - 4 = 0$

**Solution:** See Table 2.8.17.

TABLE 2.8.17

$\mathbf{n}_1$	$\mathbf{n}_2$	$\mathbf{n}_1^T \mathbf{n}_2$	$\ \mathbf{n}_1\ $	$\ \mathbf{n}_2\ $	Angle
$\begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 5 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \\ -10 \end{pmatrix}$	-44	$\sqrt{110}$	$\sqrt{110}$	$\cos^{-1} -\frac{2}{5}$
$\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$	0			perpendicular
$\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -3 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix}$	36	$\sqrt{24}$	$\sqrt{54}$	parallel
$\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$	14	$\sqrt{14}$	$\sqrt{14}$	parallel
$\begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 8 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$	9	9	$\sqrt{2}$	$45^\circ$

2.8.18 Show that the line joining the origin to the point  $P(2, 1, 1)$  is perpendicular to the line determined by the points  $A(3, 5, -1)$ ,  $B(4, 3, -1)$ .

**Solution:**

$$(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B})^T \mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = 0 \quad \square \quad (2.8.18.1)$$

2.8.19 If  $l_1, m_1, n_1$  and  $l_2, m_2, n_2$  are the direction cosines of two mutually perpendicular lines, show that the direction cosines of the line perpendicular to both these are  $m_1 n_2 - m_2 n_1, n_1 l_2 - n_2 l_1, l_1 m_2 - l_2 m_1$ .

**Solution:**

$$\mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} l_1 & l_2 & m_1 n_2 - m_2 n_1 \\ m_1 & m_2 & n_1 l_2 - n_2 l_1 \\ n_1 & n_2 & l_1 m_2 - l_2 m_1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.8.19.1)$$

satisfies (2.7.0.5.1). Hence, the three vectors are mutually perpendicular.

2.8.20 If the lines  $\frac{x-1}{-3} = \frac{y-2}{2k} = \frac{z-3}{2}$  and  $\frac{x-1}{3k} = \frac{y-1}{1} = \frac{z-6}{-5}$  are perpendicular, find the value of  $k$ .

**Solution:** From the given information,

$$\mathbf{m}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 2k \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{m}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 3k \\ 1 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\Rightarrow (-3 \ 2k \ 2)^\top \begin{pmatrix} 3k \\ 1 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix} = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow k = -\frac{10}{7}$$

See Fig. 2.8.20.1



Fig. 2.8.20.1: lines represented for the given points and direction vector with  $k = -\frac{10}{7}$

- 2.8.21 If  $\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}, \mathbf{c}$  are mutually perpendicular vectors of equal magnitudes, show that the vector  $\mathbf{c} \cdot \mathbf{d} = 15$  is equally inclined to  $\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}$  and  $\mathbf{c}$ .
- 2.8.22 If  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}, \mathbf{C}$  are mutually perpendicular vectors of equal magnitudes, show that the  $\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}$  is equally inclined to  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}$  and  $\mathbf{C}$ .
- 2.8.23 Check whether  $(5, -2), (6, 4)$  and  $(7, -2)$  are the vertices of an isosceles triangle.
- 2.8.24 The perpendicular bisector of the line segment joining the points  $\mathbf{A}(1, 5)$  and  $\mathbf{B}(4, 6)$  cuts the y-axis at
- $(0, 13)$
  - $(0, -13)$
  - $(0, 12)$
  - $(13, 0)$
- 2.8.25 The point which lies on the perpendicular bisector of the line segment joining the points  $\mathbf{A}(-2, -5)$  and  $\mathbf{B}(2, 5)$  is
- $(0, 0)$
  - $(0, 2)$
  - $(2, 0)$
  - $(-2, 0)$
- 2.8.26 The points  $(-4, 0), (4, 0), (0, 3)$  are the vertices of
- right triangle
  - isosceles triangle
  - equilateral triangle
  - scalene triangle
- 2.8.27 The point  $\mathbf{A}(2, 7)$  lies on the perpendicular bisector of line segment joining the points  $\mathbf{P}(6, 5)$  and  $\mathbf{Q}(0, -4)$ .
- (2.8.20.1) 2.8.28 The points  $\mathbf{A}(-1, -2), \mathbf{B}(4, 3), \mathbf{C}(2, 5)$  and  $\mathbf{D}(-3, 0)$  in that order form a rectangle.
- 2.8.29 Name the type of triangle formed by the points  $\mathbf{A}(-5, 6), \mathbf{B}(-4, -2)$ , and  $\mathbf{C}(7, 5)$ .
- (2.8.20.2) 2.8.30 What type of a quadrilateral do the points  $\mathbf{A}(2, -2), \mathbf{B}(7, 3), \mathbf{C}(11, -1)$ , and  $\mathbf{D}(6, -6)$  taken in that order, form?
- (2.8.20.3) 2.8.31 Find the coordinates of the point  $\mathbf{Q}$  on the x-axis which lies on the perpendicular bisector of the line segment joining the points  $\mathbf{A}(-5, -2)$  and  $\mathbf{B}(4, -2)$ . Name the type of triangle formed by points  $\mathbf{Q}, \mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{B}$ .
- 2.8.32 The points  $\mathbf{A}(2, 9), \mathbf{B}(a, 5)$  and  $\mathbf{C}(5, 5)$  are the vertices of a triangle  $\mathbf{ABC}$  right angled at  $\mathbf{B}$ . Find the values of  $a$  and hence the area of  $\triangle \mathbf{ABC}$ .
- 2.8.33 Find a vector of magnitude 6, which is perpendicular to both the vectors  $2\hat{i} - \hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$  and  $4\hat{i} - \hat{j} + 3\hat{k}$ .
- 2.8.34 If  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}, \mathbf{C}, \mathbf{D}$  are the points with position vectors  $\hat{i} + \hat{j} - \hat{k}, 2\hat{i} - \hat{j} + 3\hat{k}, 2\hat{i} - 3\hat{k}, 3\hat{i} - 2\hat{j} + \hat{k}$ , respectively, find the projection of  $\overline{\mathbf{AB}}$  along  $\overline{\mathbf{CD}}$ .
- 2.8.35 Find the value of  $\lambda$  such that the vectors  $\mathbf{a} = 2\hat{i} + \lambda\hat{j} + \hat{k}$  and  $\mathbf{b} = \hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + 3\hat{k}$  are orthogonal.
- 0
  - 1
  - $\frac{3}{2}$
  - $-\frac{5}{2}$
- 2.8.36 Projection vector of  $\mathbf{a}$  on  $\mathbf{b}$  is
- $\left( \frac{\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{b}|^2} \right)$
  - $\frac{\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{b}|}$
  - $\frac{\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{a}|}$
  - $\left( \frac{\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{a}|^2} \right)$
- 2.8.37 The vectors  $\lambda\hat{i} + \lambda\hat{j} + 2\hat{k}, \hat{i} + \lambda\hat{j} - \hat{k}$  and  $2\hat{i} - \hat{j} + \lambda\hat{k}$  are coplanar if
- $\lambda = -2$
  - $\lambda = 0$
  - $\lambda = 1$
  - $\lambda = -1$
- 2.8.38 The number of vectors of unit length perpendicular to the vectors  $\mathbf{a} = 2\hat{i} + \hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$  and  $\mathbf{b} = \hat{j} + \hat{k}$  is
- one
  - two
  - three
  - infinite
- 2.8.39 If  $\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{a} = 0, \mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 0$  and  $\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{c} = 0$  for some non-zero vector  $\mathbf{r}$ , then the value of  $\mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c})$  is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2.8.40 If  $|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}| = |\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}|$ , then the vectors  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$  are orthogonal.
- 2.8.41 Prove that the lines  $x = py + q, z = ry + s$  and  $x = p'y + q', z = r'y + s'$  are perpendicular if  $pp' + rr' + 1 = 0$ .
- 2.8.42 Find the equation of a plane which bisects perpendicularly the line joining the points  $\mathbf{A}(2, 3, 4)$  and  $\mathbf{B}(4, 5, 8)$  at right angles.
- 2.8.43  $\overline{\mathbf{AB}} = 3\hat{i} - \hat{j} + \hat{k}$  and  $\overline{\mathbf{CD}} = -3\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + 4\hat{k}$  are two vectors.

The position vectors of the points A and C are  $6\hat{i} + 7\hat{j} + 4\hat{k}$  and  $-9\hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$ , respectively. Find the position vector of a point P on the line AB and a point Q on the line CD such that  $\overrightarrow{PQ}$  is perpendicular to  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  and  $\overrightarrow{CD}$  both.

- 2.8.44 Show that the straight lines whose direction cosines are given by  $2l + 2m - n = 0$  and  $mn + nl + lm = 0$  are at right angles.
- 2.8.45 If  $l_1, m_1, n_1; l_2, m_2, n_2; l_3, m_3, n_3$  are the direction cosines of the three mutually perpendicular lines, prove that the line whose direction cosines are proportional to  $l_1 + l_2 + l_3, m_1 + m_2 + m_3, n_1 + n_2 + n_3$  make angles with them.
- 2.8.46 The intercepts made by the plane  $2x - 3y + 5z + 4 = 0$  on the co-ordinate axis are  $\left(-2, \frac{4}{3}, -\frac{4}{5}\right)$ .
- 2.8.47 The line  $\overrightarrow{r} = 2\hat{i} - 3\hat{j} - \hat{k} + \lambda(\hat{i} - \hat{j} + 2\hat{k})$  lies in the plane  $\overrightarrow{r} \cdot (3\hat{i} + \hat{j} - \hat{k}) + 2 = 0$ .
- 2.8.48 Line joining the points (3,-4) and (-2,6) is perpendicular to the line joining the points (-3,6) and (9,-18).

## 2.9 Vector Product

- 2.9.1 Find  $|\vec{a} \times \vec{b}|$ , if  $\vec{a} = \hat{i} - 7\hat{j} + 7\hat{k}$  and  $\vec{b} = 3\hat{i} - 2\hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$ .

**Solution:** From (2.10.0.1.3),

$$|A_{23} \quad B_{23}| = \begin{vmatrix} -7 & -2 \\ 7 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = 0 \quad (2.9.1.1)$$

$$|A_{31} \quad B_{31}| = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 7 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = -19 \quad (2.9.1.2)$$

$$|A_{12} \quad B_{12}| = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ -7 & -2 \end{vmatrix} = 19, \quad (2.9.1.3)$$

$$|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}| = \left\| \begin{pmatrix} |A_{23} \quad B_{23}| \\ |A_{31} \quad B_{31}| \\ |A_{12} \quad B_{12}| \end{pmatrix} \right\| = 19\sqrt{2} \quad (2.9.1.4)$$

from (2.10.0.2.1).

- 2.9.2 Find  $\lambda$  and  $\mu$  if  $(2\hat{i} + 6\hat{j} + 27\hat{k}) \times (\hat{i} + \lambda\hat{j} + \mu\hat{k}) = \vec{0}$ .

**Solution:** From Appendix 2.10.0.4, performing row reduction,

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 6 & 27 \\ 1 & \lambda & \mu \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_2 \leftarrow 2R_2 - R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 6 & 27 \\ 0 & 2\lambda - 6 & 2\mu - 27 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.9.2.1)$$

$$R_2 = 0 \implies \mu = \frac{27}{2}, \lambda = 3. \quad (2.9.2.2)$$

- 2.9.3 Find the area of the triangle with vertices A(1, 1, 2), B(2, 3, 5) and C(1, 5, 5).

**Solution:**

$$\therefore \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 4 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (2.9.3.1)$$

$$\frac{1}{2} \left\| \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 4 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \right\| = \frac{1}{2} \left\| \begin{pmatrix} -6 \\ 3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\| = \frac{\sqrt{61}}{2} \quad (2.9.3.2)$$

using (1.1.6.1), which is the the desired area.

- 2.9.4 Find the area of the parallelogram whose adjacent sides are determined by the vectors  $\vec{a} = \hat{i} - \hat{j} + 3\hat{k}$  and  $\vec{b} =$

$2\hat{i} - 7\hat{j} + \hat{k}$ .

**Solution:** From (1.1.6.1), the desired area is obtained as

$$\left\| \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -7 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \right\| = \left\| \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 5 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix} \right\| = 15\sqrt{2} \quad (2.9.4.1)$$

- 2.9.5 Find the area of a rhombus if its vertices are A(3, 0), B(4, 5), C(-1, 4) and D(-2, -1) taken in order.

**Solution:** The area of the rhombus is

$$\left\| (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D}) \times (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}) \right\| = \left| \begin{vmatrix} 5 & 1 \\ 1 & 5 \end{vmatrix} \right| = 24 \quad (2.9.5.1)$$

See Fig. 2.9.5.1.

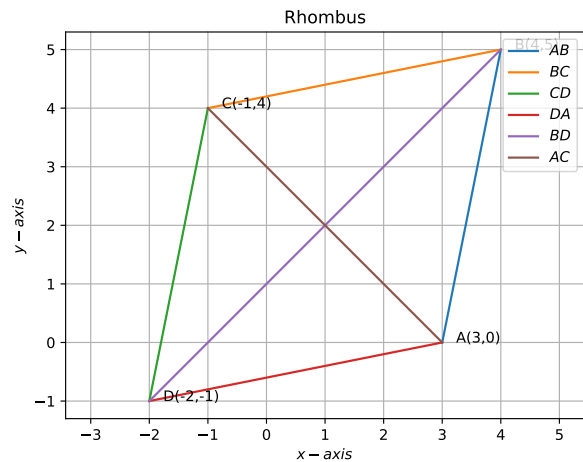


Fig. 2.9.5.1

- 2.9.6 Let the vectors  $\vec{a}$  and  $\vec{b}$  be such that  $|\vec{a}| = 3$  and  $|\vec{b}| = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{3}$ , then  $\vec{a} \times \vec{b}$  is a unit vector, if the angle between  $\vec{a}$  and  $\vec{b}$  is

- $\frac{\pi}{6}$
- $\frac{\pi}{4}$
- $\frac{\pi}{3}$
- $\frac{\pi}{2}$

**Solution:** From the given information and (2.10.0.5.1)

$$\|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}\| = \|\mathbf{a}\| \|\mathbf{b}\| \sin \theta = 1 \quad (2.9.6.1)$$

$$\implies \sin \theta = \frac{1}{\|\mathbf{a}\| \|\mathbf{b}\|} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \quad (2.9.6.2)$$

$$\implies \theta = \frac{\pi}{4} \quad (2.9.6.3)$$

- 2.9.7 Area of a rectangle having vertices A, B, C and D with position vectors  $-\hat{i} + \frac{1}{2}\hat{j} + 4\hat{k}, \hat{i} + \frac{1}{2}\hat{j} + 4\hat{k}, \hat{i} - \frac{1}{2}\hat{j} + 4\hat{k}$  and  $-\hat{i} - \frac{1}{2}\hat{j} + 4\hat{k}$ , respectively is

- $\frac{1}{2}$
- 1
- 2
- 4

**Solution:** Since

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.9.7.1)$$

$$\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.9.7.2)$$

area of the rectangle is

$$\|(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}) \times (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B})\| = 2 \quad (2.9.7.3)$$

See Fig. 2.9.7.1



Fig. 2.9.7.1

2.9.8 Find the area of the triangle whose vertices are

a)  $(2, 3), (-1, 0), (2, -4)$

b)  $(-5, -1), (3, -5), (5, 2)$

**Solution:** See Table 2.9.8.

TABLE 2.9.8

	$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}$	$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C}$	$\frac{1}{2} \ (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}) \times (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C})\ $
a)	$\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix}$	$\frac{21}{2}$
b)	$\begin{pmatrix} -8 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -10 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$	32

2.9.9 Find the area of the triangle formed by joining the mid-points of the sides of the triangle whose vertices are  $A(0, -1), B(2, 1)$  and  $C(0, 3)$ . Find the ratio of this area to the area of the given triangle.

**Solution:** Using (1.3.1.1), the mid point coordinates are given by

$$\mathbf{P} = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.9.9.1)$$

$$\mathbf{Q} = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.9.9.2)$$

$$\mathbf{R} = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{C}) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.9.9.3)$$

$$\therefore \mathbf{P} - \mathbf{Q} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{Q} - \mathbf{R} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.9.9.4)$$

$$ar(PQR) = \frac{1}{2} \|(\mathbf{P} - \mathbf{Q}) \times (\mathbf{Q} - \mathbf{R})\| = 1 \quad (2.9.9.5)$$

Similarly,

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.9.9.6)$$

$$\Rightarrow ar(ABC) = \frac{1}{2} \|(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}) \times (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C})\| = 4 \quad (2.9.9.7)$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{ar(PQR)}{ar(ABC)} = \frac{1}{4} \quad (2.9.9.8)$$

See Fig. 2.9.9.1



Fig. 2.9.9.1

2.9.10 Find the area of the quadrilateral whose vertices, taken in order, are  $A(-4, -2), B(-3, -5), C(3, -2)$  and  $D(2, 3)$ .

**Solution:** See Fig. 2.9.10.1

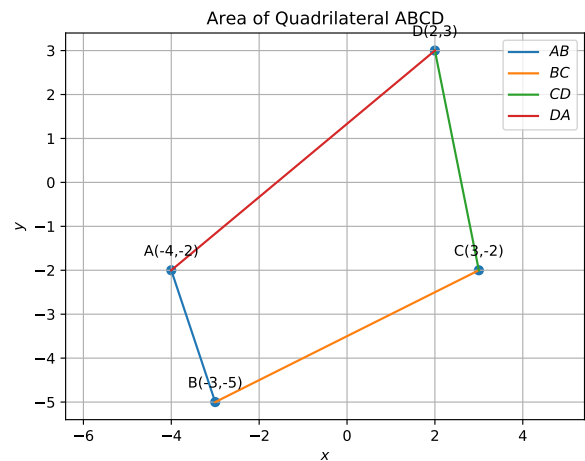


Fig. 2.9.10.1

$$\therefore \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} -6 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (2.9.10.1)$$

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} -6 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ -8 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (2.9.10.2)$$

$$ar(ABD) = \frac{1}{2} \|(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}) \times (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D})\| = \frac{23}{2} \quad (2.9.10.3)$$

$$ar(BCD) = \frac{1}{2} \|(\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C}) \times (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{D})\| = \frac{33}{2} \quad (2.9.10.4)$$

$$\Rightarrow ar(ABCD) = ar(ABD) + ar(BCD) = 28 \quad (2.9.10.5)$$

2.9.11 Verify that a median of a triangle divides it into two triangles of equal areas for  $\triangle ABC$  whose vertices are  $\mathbf{A}(4, -6)$ ,  $\mathbf{B}(3, 2)$ , and  $\mathbf{C}(5, 2)$ .

**Solution:**

$$\mathbf{D} = \frac{\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}}{2} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (2.9.11.1)$$

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -6 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.9.11.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow ar(ABD) = \frac{1}{2} \|(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}) \times (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D})\| = 3 \quad (2.9.11.3)$$

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -8 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -6 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.9.11.4)$$

$$\Rightarrow ar(ACD) = \frac{1}{2} \|(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C}) \times (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D})\| = 3 = ar(ABD) \quad (2.9.11.5)$$

See Fig. 2.9.11.1.



Fig. 2.9.11.1

by

$$\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.9.12.1)$$

and the corresponding unit vectors are

$$\frac{\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}}{\|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}\|} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{3}{\sqrt{45}} \\ -\frac{6}{\sqrt{45}} \\ \frac{2}{\sqrt{45}} \end{pmatrix}, \frac{\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}}{\|\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}\|} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{69}} \\ -\frac{2}{\sqrt{69}} \\ \frac{8}{\sqrt{69}} \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.9.12.2)$$

The area of the parallelogram is given by

$$\|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}\| = \left\| \begin{pmatrix} 22 \\ -11 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \right\| = \sqrt{605} \quad (2.9.12.3)$$

The vertices of a  $\triangle ABC$  are  $\mathbf{A}(4, 6)$ ,  $\mathbf{B}(1, 5)$  and  $\mathbf{C}(7, 2)$ . A line is drawn to intersect sides  $AB$  and  $AC$  at  $\mathbf{D}$  and  $\mathbf{E}$  respectively, such that  $\frac{AD}{AB} = \frac{AE}{AC} = \frac{1}{4}$ . Calculate the area of  $\triangle ADE$  and compare it with the area of the  $\triangle ABC$ .

**Solution:** See Fig. 2.9.13.1. Using section formula



Fig. 2.9.13.1

2.9.12 The two adjacent sides of a parallelogram are  $\mathbf{a} = 2\hat{i} - 4\hat{j} + 5\hat{k}$  and  $\mathbf{b} = \hat{i} - 2\hat{j} - 3\hat{k}$ . Find the unit vector parallel to its diagonal. Also, find its area.

**Solution:** The diagonals of the parallelogram are given

(1.3.1.1),

$$\mathbf{D} = \frac{3\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}}{4} = \frac{1}{4} \begin{pmatrix} 13 \\ 23 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.9.13.1)$$

$$\mathbf{E} = \frac{3\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{C}}{4} = \frac{1}{4} \begin{pmatrix} 19 \\ 20 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.9.13.2)$$

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D} = \frac{1}{4} \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{E} = \frac{1}{4} \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.9.13.3)$$

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} -6 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.9.13.4)$$

$$\Rightarrow \text{ar}(ABD) = \frac{1}{2} \|(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D}) \times (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{E})\| = \frac{15}{32} \quad (2.9.13.5)$$

$$\text{ar}(ABC) = \frac{1}{2} \|(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}) \times (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C})\| = \frac{15}{2} \quad (2.9.13.6)$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{\text{ar}(ADE)}{\text{ar}(ABC)} = \frac{1}{16} \quad (2.9.13.7)$$

2.9.14 Draw a quadrilateral in the Cartesian plane, whose vertices are

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (2.9.14.1)$$

Also, find its area.

**Solution:** See Fig. 2.9.14.1. From (2.10.0.6.2),

$$\text{ar}(ABCD) = \frac{121}{2} \quad (2.9.14.2)$$

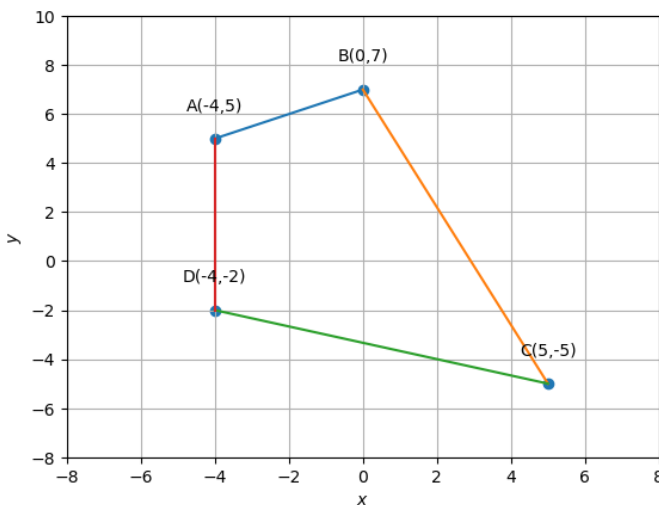


Fig. 2.9.14.1: Plot of quadrilateral ABCD

2.9.15 Find the area of region bounded by the triangle whose vertices are (1, 0), (2, 2) and (3, 1).

2.9.16 Find the area of region bounded by the triangle whose vertices are (-1, 0), (1, 3) and (3, 2).

2.9.17 Find the area of the  $\triangle ABC$ , coordinates of whose vertices are  $\mathbf{A}(2, 0)$ ,  $\mathbf{B}(4, 5)$ , and  $\mathbf{C}(6, 3)$ .

2.9.18 Show that

$$(\vec{a} - \vec{b}) \times (\vec{a} + \vec{b}) = 2(\vec{a} \times \vec{b})$$

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned} (\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}) \times (\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) &= \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} - \mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{a} \\ &= 2(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \end{aligned} \quad (2.9.18.1)$$

from (2.10.0.3.1). and (2.10.0.3.2)

2.9.19 If either  $\vec{a} = \vec{0}$  or  $\vec{b} = \vec{0}$ , then  $\vec{a} \times \vec{b} = \vec{0}$ . Is the converse true? Justify your answer with an example.

**Solution:** For

$$\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.9.19.1)$$

$$\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{0}. \quad (2.9.19.2)$$

2.9.20 Given that  $\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b} = 0$  and  $\vec{a} \times \vec{b} = \vec{0}$ . What can you conclude about the vectors  $\vec{a}$  and  $\vec{b}$ ?

2.9.21 The area of a triangle with vertices  $\mathbf{A}(3, 0)$ ,  $\mathbf{B}(7, 0)$  and  $\mathbf{C}(8, 4)$  is

- a) 14
- b) 28
- c) 8
- d) 6

2.9.22 The area of a triangle with vertices  $(a, b + c)$ ,  $(b, c + a)$  and  $(c, a + b)$  is

- a)  $(a + b + c)^2$
- b) 0
- c)  $a + b + c$
- d)  $abc$

2.9.23 Find the area of the triangle whose vertices are  $(-8, 4)$ ,  $(-6, 6)$  and  $(-3, 9)$ .

2.9.24 If  $\mathbf{D}(\frac{-1}{2}, \frac{5}{2})$ ,  $\mathbf{E}(7, 3)$  and  $\mathbf{F}(\frac{7}{2}, \frac{7}{2})$  are the midpoints of sides of  $\triangle ABC$ , find the area of the  $\triangle ABC$ .

2.9.25 If  $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c} = \mathbf{0}$ , show that  $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c} = \mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{a}$ . Interpret the result geometrically.

2.9.26 Find the sine of the angle between the vectors  $\mathbf{a} = 3\hat{i} + \hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$  and  $\mathbf{b} = 2\hat{i} - 2\hat{j} + 4\hat{k}$ .

2.9.27 Using vectors, find the area of  $\triangle ABC$  with vertices  $\mathbf{A}(1, 2, 3)$ ,  $\mathbf{B}(2, -1, 4)$  and  $\mathbf{C}(4, 5, -1)$ .

2.9.28 Using vectors, prove that the parallelograms on the same base and between the same parallels are equal in area.

2.9.29 If  $\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}, \mathbf{c}$ , determine the vertices of a triangle, show that  $\frac{1}{2} [\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}]$  gives the vector area of the triangle. Hence deduce the condition that the three points  $\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}, \mathbf{c}$ , are collinear. Also find the unit vector normal to the plane of the triangle.

2.9.30 Find the area of the parallelogram whose diagonals are  $2\hat{i} - \hat{j} + \hat{k}$  and  $\hat{i} + 3\hat{j} - \hat{k}$ .

2.9.31 The vector from origin to the points A and B are  $\mathbf{a} = 2\hat{i} - 3\hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$  and  $\mathbf{b} = 2\hat{i} + 3\hat{j} + \hat{k}$ , respectively, then the area of  $\triangle OAB$  is

- a) 340  
b)  $\sqrt{25}$   
c)  $\sqrt{229}$   
d)  $\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{229}$

2.10.0.5.

$$\|\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}\| = \|\mathbf{A}\| \times \|\mathbf{B}\| \sin \theta \quad (2.10.0.5.1)$$

where  $\theta$  is the angle between the vectors.

$$ar(ABCD) = \frac{1}{2} ((\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}) \times (\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{B})) \quad (2.10.0.6.1)$$

$$(2.10.0.6.2)$$

2.9.32 For any vector  $\mathbf{a}$ , the value of  $(\mathbf{a} \times \hat{i})^2 + (\mathbf{a} \times \hat{j})^2 + (\mathbf{a} \times \hat{k})^2$  is equal to

- a)  $a$   
b)  $3a$   
c)  $4a$   
d)  $2a$

2.9.33 If  $|\mathbf{a}| = 10$ ,  $|\mathbf{b}| = 2$  and  $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 12$ , then value of  $|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}|$  is

- a) 5  
b) 10  
c) 14  
d) 16

2.9.34 If  $\mathbf{a} = \hat{i} + \hat{j} + \hat{k}$  and  $\mathbf{b} = \hat{j} - \hat{k}$ , find a vector  $\mathbf{c}$  such that  $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{c} = \mathbf{b}$  and  $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c} = 3$ .

2.9.35 The area of the quadrilateral ABCD, where A(0, 4, 1), B(2, 3, -1), C(4, 5, 0) and D(2, 6, 2), is equal to

- a) 9 sq. units  
b) 18 sq. units  
c) 27 sq. units  
d) 81 sq. units

2.9.36 Find the area of region bounded by the triangle whose vertices are (-1, 1), (0, 5) and (3, 2).

## 2.10 Formulae

2.10.0.1. Let

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \\ a_3 \end{pmatrix} \equiv a_1 \vec{i} + a_2 \vec{j} + a_3 \vec{k}, \quad (2.10.0.1.1)$$

$$\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ b_3 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (2.10.0.1.2)$$

and

$$\mathbf{A}_{ij} = \begin{pmatrix} a_i \\ a_j \end{pmatrix}, \quad (2.10.0.1.3)$$

$$\mathbf{B}_{ij} = \begin{pmatrix} b_i \\ b_j \end{pmatrix}.$$

2.10.0.2. The *cross product* or *vector product* of  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}$  is defined as

$$\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} |\mathbf{A}_{23} & \mathbf{B}_{23}| \\ |\mathbf{A}_{31} & \mathbf{B}_{31}| \\ |\mathbf{A}_{12} & \mathbf{B}_{12}| \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.10.0.2.1)$$

2.10.0.3. Verify that

$$\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = -\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{A} \quad (2.10.0.3.1)$$

$$\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{0} \quad (2.10.0.3.2)$$

2.10.0.4. If

$$\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{0},$$

 $\mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{B}$  are linearly independent.

2.11.2 The base of an equilateral triangle with side  $2a$  lies along the y-axis such that the mid-point of the base is at the origin. Find vertices of the triangle.

## 2.11 Miscellaneous

2.11.1 The two opposite vertices of a square are (-1, 2) and (3, 2). Find the coordinates of the other two vertices.

**Solution:** Let

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.11.1.1)$$

The given square is available in Fig. 2.11.1.1. Fig. 2.11.1.2 shows the translation of  $\mathbf{A}$  to the origin. Fig. 2.11.1.3 shows the subsequent anticlockwise rotation of the square by  $45^\circ$ . From (2.12.1.1).

$$\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \equiv \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \phi = 0^\circ \quad (2.11.1.2)$$

where  $\phi$  is the angle made by  $AC$  with the x-axis. Substituting numerical values in (2.12.4.1),

$$\mathbf{B} = 2 \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (2.11.1.3)$$

Similarly,

$$\mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (2.11.1.4)$$

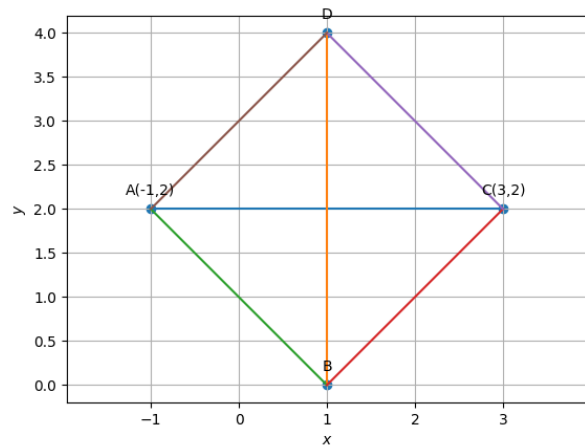


Fig. 2.11.1.1



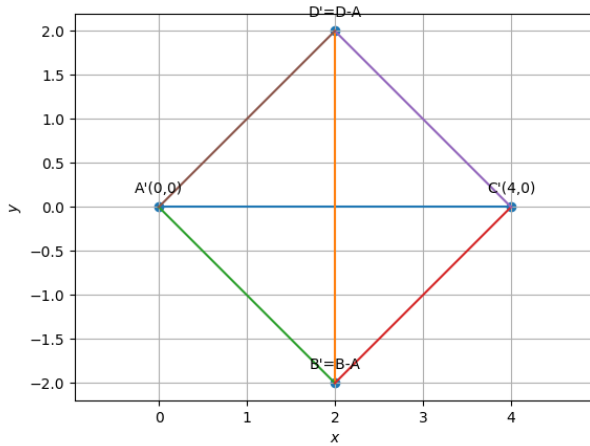


Fig. 2.11.1.2

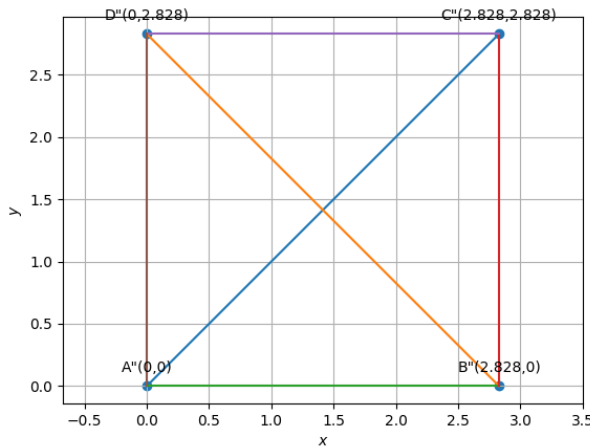


Fig. 2.11.1.3

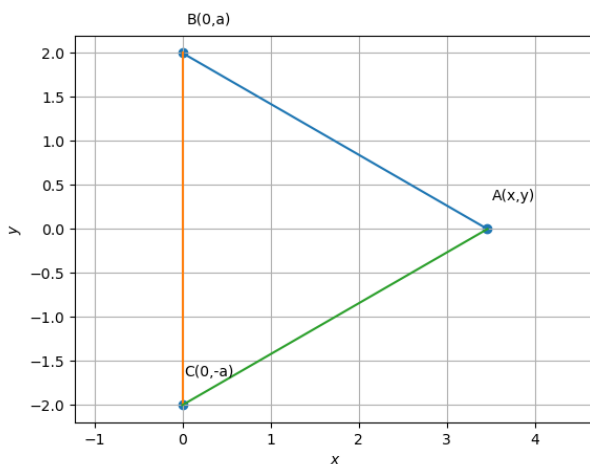


Fig. 2.11.2.1

**Solution:** Let the base be  $BC$ . From the given informa-

tion,

$$\mathbf{B} = a\mathbf{e}_2, \mathbf{C} = -a\mathbf{e}_2 \quad (2.11.2.1)$$

Since  $\mathbf{A}$  lies on the  $x$ -axis,

$$\mathbf{A} = k\mathbf{e}_1 \quad (2.11.2.2)$$

and

$$\|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C}\|^2 = (2a)^2 \quad (2.11.2.3)$$

$$\Rightarrow \|\mathbf{A}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{C}\|^2 - 2\mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{C} = 4a^2 \quad (2.11.2.4)$$

$$\Rightarrow k^2 + a^2 = 4a^2 \quad (2.11.2.5)$$

$$\text{or, } k = \pm a\sqrt{3} \quad (2.11.2.6)$$

Thus,

$$\mathbf{A} = \pm \sqrt{3}a\mathbf{e}_1 \quad (2.11.2.7)$$

Fig. 2.11.2.1 is plotted for  $a = 2$ .

2.11.3 The value of the expression  $|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}| + (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b})$  is \_\_\_\_\_.

2.11.4 If  $|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}|^2 + |\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}|^2 = 144$  and  $|\mathbf{a}| = 4$ , then  $|\mathbf{b}|$  is equal to \_\_\_\_\_.

2.11.5 If the direction cosines of a line are  $(k, k, k)$  then

- $k > 0$
- $0 < k < 1$
- $k = 1$
- $k = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$  or  $-\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$

2.11.6 Find the position vector of a point  $A$  in space such that  $\overrightarrow{OA}$  is inclined at  $60^\circ$  to  $OX$  and at  $45^\circ$  to  $OY$  and  $|\overrightarrow{OA}| = 10$  units.

2.11.7 If  $(-4, 3)$  and  $(4, 3)$  are two vertices of an equilateral triangle. Find the coordinates of the third vertex, given that the origin lies in the interior of the triangle.

2.11.8  $\mathbf{A}(6, 1)$ ,  $\mathbf{B}(8, 2)$  and  $\mathbf{C}(9, 4)$  are three vertices of a parallelogram  $ABCD$ . If  $\mathbf{C}$  is the midpoint of  $DC$  find the area of  $\triangle ADE$

2.11.9 If the points  $\mathbf{A}(1, -2)$ ,  $\mathbf{B}(2, 3)$ ,  $\mathbf{C}(a, 2)$  and  $\mathbf{D}(-4, -3)$  form a parallelogram, find the value of  $a$  and height of the parallelogram taking  $AB$  as base.

2.11.10 Ayush starts walking from his house to office. Instead of going to the office directly, he goes to a bank first, from there to his daughter school and then reaches the office what is the extra distance travelled by Ayush in reaching his office? (Assume that all distances covered are in straight lines). If the house is situated at  $(2, 4)$ , bank at  $(5, 8)$ , school at  $(13, 14)$  and office at  $(13, 26)$  and coordinates are in km.

## 2.12 Formulae

2.12.1. The affine transformation is given by

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{P}\mathbf{y} + \mathbf{c} \quad (2.12.1.1)$$

where  $\mathbf{c}$  is the translation vector.

2.12.2. The matrix

$$\mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & -\sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.12.2.1)$$

is defined to be the rotation matrix.

2.12.3.

$$\mathbf{P}^T \mathbf{P} = \mathbf{I} \quad (2.12.3.1)$$

$\mathbf{P}$  is known as an *orthogonal* matrix.

2.12.4. Given vertices  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{C}$  of a square, the other two vertices are given by

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{B} &= \|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}\| \cos \frac{\pi}{4} \mathbf{P} \mathbf{e}_1 + \mathbf{A} \\ \mathbf{D} &= \|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}\| \cos \frac{\pi}{4} \mathbf{P} \mathbf{e}_2 + \mathbf{A} \end{aligned} \quad (2.12.4.1)$$

**Solution:** Shifting  $\mathbf{A}$  to the origin and rotating the square clockwise by an angle  $\phi$  made by  $CA$  with the  $x$ -axis, from (2.12.1.1),

$$\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{P} \mathbf{0} + \mathbf{c} \quad (2.12.4.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{c} = \mathbf{A} \quad (2.12.4.3)$$

$$\theta = \phi - \frac{\pi}{4} \quad (2.12.4.4)$$

and we obtain a square with the other vertices as

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{B}_1 &= \|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}\| \cos \frac{\pi}{4} \mathbf{e}_1 \\ \mathbf{D}_1 &= \|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}\| \cos \frac{\pi}{4} \mathbf{e}_2 \end{aligned} \quad (2.12.4.5)$$

From (2.12.1.1) and (2.12.4.5), we obtain (2.12.4.1).

### 3 CONSTRUCTIONS

#### 3.1 Triangle

3.1.1 Construct a triangle  $ABC$  in which  $BC = 7\text{cm}$ ,  $\angle B = 75^\circ$  and  $AB + AC = 13\text{cm}$ .

**Solution:** From (3.3.1.3) and (3.3.1.4), we obtain Fig. 3.1.1.1. See

codes/triangle/const-aBsum.py

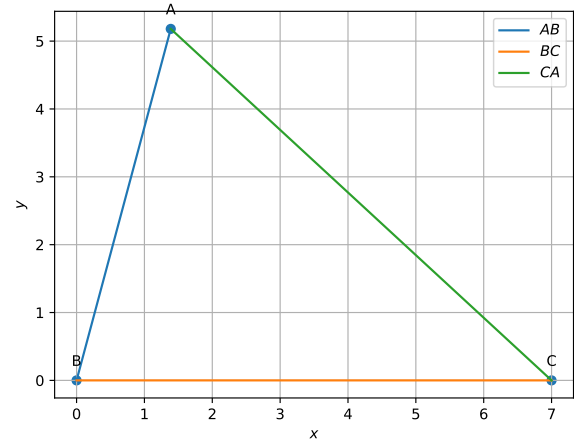


Fig. 3.1.1.1

3.1.2 Construct a triangle  $ABC$  in which  $BC = 8\text{cm}$ ,  $\angle B = 45^\circ$  and  $AB - AC = 3.5\text{cm}$ .

**Solution:** See Fig. 3.1.2.1.

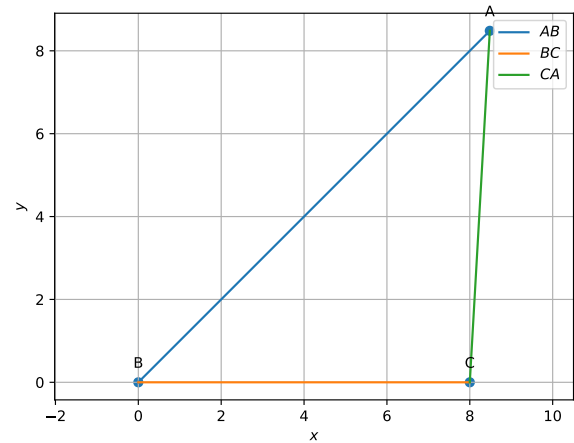


Fig. 3.1.2.1

3.1.3 Construct a triangle  $ABC$  in which  $BC = 6\text{cm}$ ,  $\angle B = 60^\circ$  and  $AC - AB = 2\text{cm}$ .

**Solution:** See Fig. 3.1.3.1 obtained by substituting  $K = -2$ .

3.1.4 Construct a right triangle whose base is  $12\text{cm}$  and sum of its hypotenuse and other side is  $18\text{cm}$ .

**Solution:** For  $a = 12$ ,  $\angle B = 90^\circ$ ,  $b + c = 18$ , we obtain Fig. 3.1.4.1.

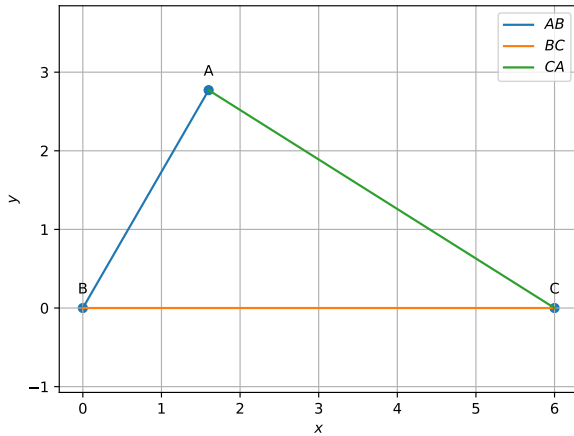


Fig. 3.1.3.1



Fig. 3.1.5.1

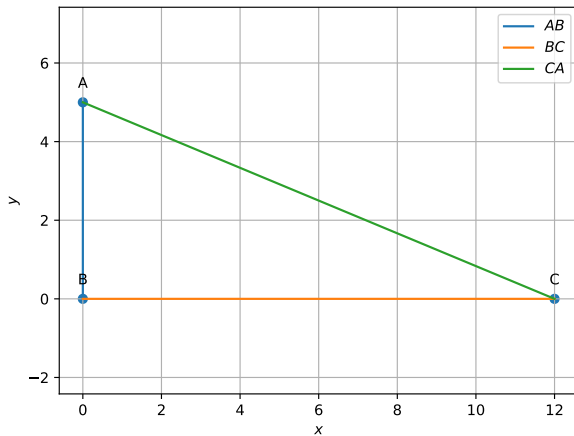


Fig. 3.1.4.1

- 3.1.5 Construct a triangle  $ABC$  in which  $\angle B = 30^\circ$ ,  $\angle C = 90^\circ$  and  $AB + BC + CA = 11\text{cm}$ .

**Solution:** From (3.3.2.4) and (3.3.2.5), Fig. 3.1.5.1 is generated. See

codes/triangle/const-BCsum.py

- 3.1.6 Draw a right triangle  $ABC$  in which  $BC = 12\text{cm}$ ,  $AB = 5\text{cm}$  and  $\angle B = 90^\circ$ .
- 3.1.7 Draw an isosceles triangle  $ABC$  in which  $AB = AC = 6\text{cm}$  and  $BC = 6\text{cm}$ .
- 3.1.8 Draw a triangle  $ABC$  in which  $AB = 5\text{cm}$ ,  $BC = 6\text{cm}$  and  $\angle ABC = 60^\circ$ .
- 3.1.9 Draw a triangle  $ABC$  in which  $AB = 4\text{cm}$ ,  $BC = 6\text{cm}$  and  $AC = 9\text{cm}$ .
- 3.1.10 Draw a triangle  $ABC$  in which  $BC = 6\text{cm}$ ,  $CA = 5\text{cm}$  and  $AB = 4\text{cm}$ .
- 3.1.11 Is it possible to construct a triangle with lengths of its sides as  $4\text{cm}$ ,  $3\text{cm}$  and  $7\text{cm}$ ? Give reason for your answer.
- 3.1.12 Is it possible to construct a triangle with lengths of its sides as  $9\text{cm}$ ,  $7\text{cm}$  and  $17\text{cm}$ ? Give reason for your

answer.

- 3.1.13 Is it possible to construct a triangle with lengths of its sides as  $8\text{cm}$ ,  $7\text{cm}$  and  $4\text{cm}$ ? Give reason for your answer.
- 3.1.14 Two sides of a triangle are of lengths  $5\text{cm}$  and  $1.5\text{cm}$ . The length of the third side of the triangle cannot be
- $3.6\text{cm}$
  - $4.1\text{cm}$
  - $3.8\text{cm}$
  - $3.4\text{cm}$
- 3.1.15 The construction of a triangle  $ABC$ , given that  $BC = 6\text{cm}$ ,  $\angle B = 45^\circ$  is not possible when difference of  $AB$  and  $AC$  is equal to
- $6.9\text{cm}$
  - $5.2\text{cm}$
  - $5.0\text{cm}$
  - $4.0\text{cm}$
- 3.1.16 The construction of a triangle  $ABC$ , given that  $BC = 6\text{cm}$ ,  $\angle C = 60^\circ$  is possible when difference of  $AB$  and  $AC$  is equal to
- $3.2\text{cm}$
  - $3.1\text{cm}$
  - $3\text{cm}$
  - $2.8\text{cm}$

- 3.1.17 Construct a triangle whose sides are  $3.6\text{cm}$ ,  $3.0\text{cm}$  and  $4.8\text{cm}$ . Bisect the smallest angle and measure each part.
- 3.1.18 Construct a triangle  $ABC$  in which  $BC = 5\text{cm}$ ,  $\angle B = 60^\circ$  and  $AC + AB = 7.5\text{cm}$ .

Construct each of the following and give justification :

- 3.19 A triangle if its perimeter is  $10.4\text{cm}$  and two angles are  $45^\circ$  and  $120^\circ$ .
- 3.20 A triangle  $PQR$  given that  $QR = 3\text{cm}$ ,  $\angle PQR = 45^\circ$  and  $QP - PR = 2\text{cm}$ .
- 3.21 A right triangle when one side is  $3.5\text{cm}$  and sum of other sides and the hypotenuse is  $5.5\text{cm}$ .
- 3.22 An equilateral triangle if its altitude is  $3.2\text{cm}$ .

Write true or false in each of the following. Give reasons for your answer:

- 3.23 A triangle  $ABC$  can be constructed in which  $AB = 5\text{cm}$ ,  $\angle A = 45^\circ$  and  $BC + AC = 5\text{cm}$ .
- 3.24 A triangle  $ABC$  can be constructed in which  $BC = 6\text{cm}$ ,  $\angle B = 30^\circ$  and  $AC - AB = 4\text{cm}$ .
- 3.25 A triangle  $ABC$  can be constructed in which  $\angle B = 105^\circ$ ,  $\angle C = 90^\circ$  and  $AB + BC + AC = 10\text{cm}$ .
- 3.26 A triangle  $ABC$  can be constructed in which  $\angle B = 60^\circ$ ,  $\angle C = 45^\circ$  and  $AB + BC + AC = 12\text{cm}$ .
- 3.27 Draw a right triangle  $ABC$  in which  $BC = 12\text{ cm}$ ,  $AB = 5\text{ cm}$  and  $\angle B = 90^\circ$ .
- 3.28 Draw a triangle  $ABC$  in which  $AB=4\text{ cm}$ ,  $BC = 6\text{cm}$  and  $AC = 9$ .
- 3.29 Draw a triangle  $ABC$  in which  $AB=5\text{ cm}$ ,  $BC = 6\text{cm}$  and  $\angle ABC = 60^\circ$ .
- 3.30 Draw a parallelogram  $ABCD$  in which  $BC = 5\text{ cm}$ ,  $AB = 3\text{ cm}$  and  $\angle ABC = 60^\circ$ , divide it into triangles  $ACB$  and  $ABD$  by the diagonal  $BD$ . Construct the triangle  $BD'C'$  similar to  $\triangle BDC$  with scale factor  $\frac{4}{3}$ . Draw the line segment  $D'A'$  parallel to  $DA$  where  $A'$  lies on extended side  $BA$ . Is  $A'BC'D'$  a parallelogram?
- 3.31 Draw a triangle  $ABC$  in which  $BC = 6\text{ cm}$ ,  $CA = 5\text{ cm}$  and  $AB = 4\text{ cm}$ .

### 3.2 Quadrilateral

- 3.1 Draw a parallelogram  $ABCD$  in which  $BC = 5\text{cm}$ ,  $AB = 3\text{cm}$  and  $\angle ABC = 60^\circ$ , divide it into triangles  $ACB$  and  $ABD$  by the diagonal  $BD$ .
- 3.2 Construct a square of side  $3\text{cm}$ .
- 3.3 Construct a rectangle whose adjacent sides are of lengths  $5\text{cm}$  and  $3.5\text{cm}$ .
- 3.4 Construct a rhombus whose side is of length  $3.4\text{cm}$  and one of its angles is  $45^\circ$ .
- 3.5 Construct a rhombus whose diagonals are  $4\text{ cm}$  and  $6\text{ cm}$  in lengths.

### 3.3 Formulae

- 3.3.1. Construct a  $\triangle ABC$  given  $a$ ,  $\angle B$  and  $K = b + c$ .

**Solution:** Using the cosine formula in  $\triangle ABC$ ,

$$b^2 = a^2 + c^2 - 2ac \cos B \quad (3.3.1.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow (K - c)^2 = a^2 + c^2 - 2ac \cos B \quad (3.3.1.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow c = \frac{K^2 - a^2}{2(K - a \cos B)} \quad (3.3.1.3)$$

The coordinates of  $\triangle ABC$  can then be expressed as

$$\mathbf{A} = c \begin{pmatrix} \cos B \\ \sin B \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (3.3.1.4)$$

- 3.3.2. Construct a  $\triangle ABC$  given  $\angle B$ ,  $\angle C$  and  $K = a + b + c$ .

**Solution:**

$$a + b + c = K \quad (3.3.2.1)$$

$$b \cos C + c \cos B - a = 0 \quad (3.3.2.2)$$

$$b \sin C - c \sin B = 0 \quad (3.3.2.3)$$

resulting in the matrix equation

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & \cos C & \cos B \\ 0 & \sin C & -\sin B \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \end{pmatrix} = K \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (3.3.2.4)$$

which can be solved to obtain all the sides.  $\triangle ABC$  can then be plotted using

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (3.3.2.5)$$

## 4 LINEAR FORMS

## 4.1 Equation

Find the equation of line

4.1.1 passing through the point  $P = (-4, 3)$  with slope  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

**Solution:** From (1.3.2),

$$\mathbf{n} \equiv \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2} \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow \left(\frac{1}{2} \quad -1\right)\mathbf{x} = -5 \quad (4.1.1.1)$$

using (1.1.5.1). See Fig. 4.1.1.1.

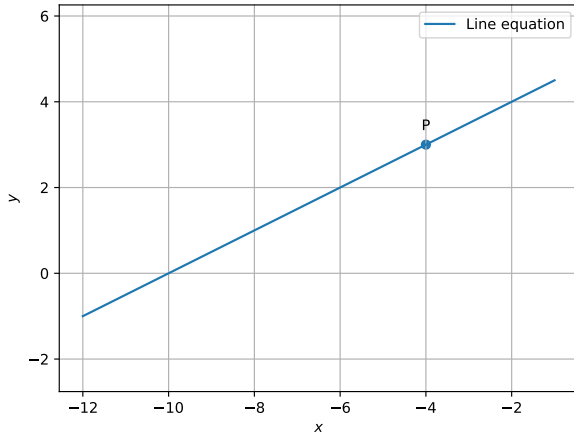


Fig. 4.1.1.1

4.1.2 passing through  $\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$  with slope  $m$ .

**Solution:**

$$\therefore \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} m \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (4.1.2.1)$$

the desired equation is

$$\left(m \quad -1\right)\left(\mathbf{x} - \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}\right) = 0 \quad (4.1.2.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow \left(m \quad -1\right)\mathbf{x} = 0 \quad (4.1.2.3)$$

4.1.3 passing through  $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2\sqrt{3} \end{pmatrix}$  and inclined with the x-axis at an angle of  $75^\circ$ .

**Solution:**

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 + \sqrt{3} \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.1.3.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow \left(-1 \quad 2 + \sqrt{3}\right)\mathbf{x} = \left(-1 \quad 2 + \sqrt{3}\right)\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2\sqrt{3} \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.1.3.2)$$

$$= 4(\sqrt{3} + 1) \quad (4.1.3.3)$$

is the desired equation. See Fig. 4.1.3.1.

4.1.4 intersecting the x-axis at a distance of 3 units to the left of origin with slope of -2.

**Solution:** From the given information,

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (4.1.4.1)$$

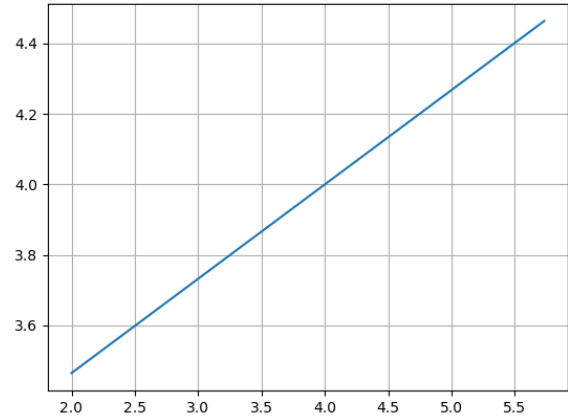


Fig. 4.1.3.1

The desired equation of the line is

$$\Rightarrow \left(2 \quad 1\right)\left(\mathbf{x} - \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}\right) = 0 \quad (4.1.4.2)$$

$$\text{or, } \left(2 \quad 1\right)\mathbf{x} = -6 \quad (4.1.4.3)$$

See Fig. 4.1.4.1.

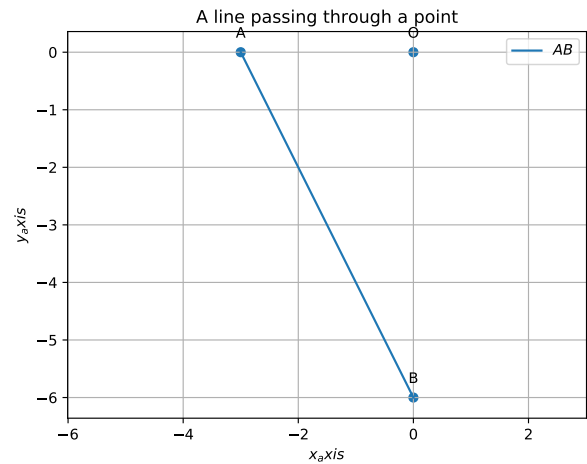


Fig. 4.1.4.1

4.1.5 intersecting the y-axis at a distance of 2 units above the origin and making an angle of  $30^\circ$  with positive direction of the x-axis.

**Solution:**

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (4.1.5.1)$$

Hence, the equation of the line is given by

$$\left(-\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \quad 1\right)\left(\mathbf{x} - \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}\right) = 0 \quad (4.1.5.2)$$

$$\text{or, } \left(-\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \quad 1\right)\mathbf{x} = 2 \quad (4.1.5.3)$$

See Fig. 4.1.5.1.

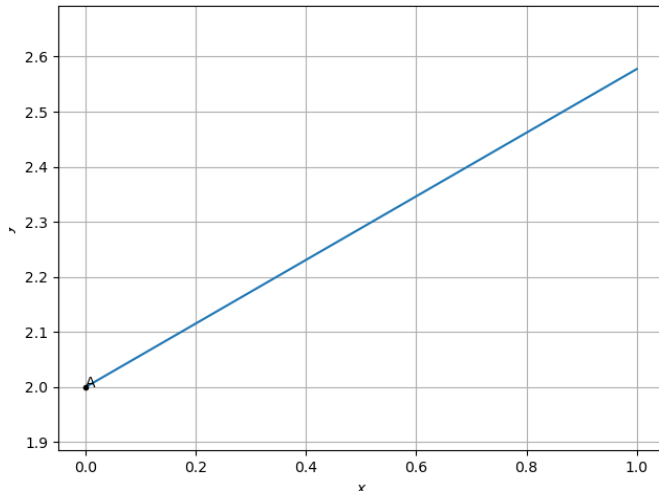


Fig. 4.1.5.1

4.1.6 passing through (1,2) and making angle  $30^\circ$  with y-axis.

4.1.7 passing through the points  $A\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$  and  $B\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}$ .

**Solution:** From (1.5.5),

$$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 \\ 2 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.1.7.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow \left( \begin{array}{cc|c} -1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & -4 & 1 \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow{R_2 \leftarrow R_2 + 2R_1} \left( \begin{array}{cc|c} -1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & -2 & 3 \end{array} \right) \quad (4.1.7.2)$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_1 \leftarrow 2R_1 + R_2} \left( \begin{array}{cc|c} -2 & 0 & 5 \\ 0 & -2 & 3 \end{array} \right) \Rightarrow \mathbf{n} = -\frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.1.7.3)$$

Thus, from (1.6.1), the equation of the line is

$$(5 \ 3)\mathbf{x} = -2 \quad (4.1.7.4)$$

See Fig. 4.1.7.1.

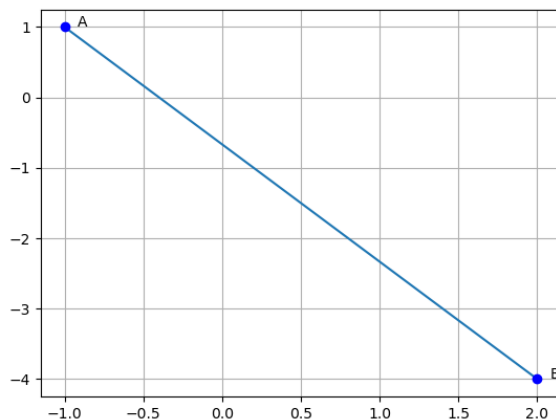


Fig. 4.1.7.1

4.1.8 passing through the points (3,4,-7) and (1,-1,6).

4.1.9 The vector equation of the line

$$\frac{x-5}{3} = \frac{y+4}{7} = \frac{z-6}{2}$$

is \_\_\_\_\_.

4.1.10 The vector equation of the line

$$\frac{x-5}{3} = \frac{y+4}{7} = \frac{z-6}{2}$$

is \_\_\_\_\_.

4.1.11 The vertices of triangle  $PQR$  are  $P(2, 1)$ ,  $Q(-2, 3)$ ,  $R(4, 5)$ . Find the equation of the median through  $R$ .

**Solution:** See Fig. 4.1.11.1. Using section formula, the

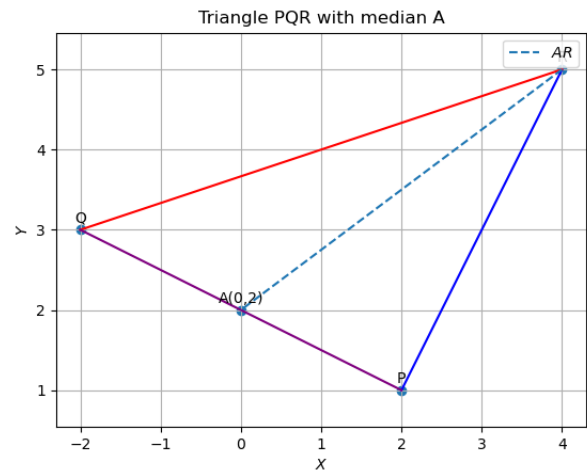


Fig. 4.1.11.1

mid point of  $PQ$  is

$$\mathbf{A} = \frac{\mathbf{P} + \mathbf{Q}}{2} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.1.11.1)$$

Following the approach in Problem 4.1.7,

$$\left( \begin{array}{cc|c} 4 & 5 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[R_2 \leftarrow 4R_2]{R_1 \leftarrow 2R_1 - 5R_2} \left( \begin{array}{cc|c} 8 & 0 & -3 \\ 0 & 8 & 4 \end{array} \right) \Rightarrow \mathbf{n} = \frac{1}{8} \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

Thus, the equation of the line is

$$(-3 \ 4)\mathbf{x} = 8 \quad (4.1.11.2)$$

4.1.12 Find the equations of the planes that pass through the points

a)  $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$ ,  $\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 4 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix}$ ,  $\mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ -2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$

b)  $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$ ,  $\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$ ,  $\mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$

**Solution:**

a) From (1.5.5),

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 6 & 4 & -5 \\ -4 & -2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.1.12.1)$$

$$\begin{aligned} &\Rightarrow \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 6 & 4 & -5 & 1 \\ -4 & -2 & 3 & 1 \end{array} \right) \\ &\xrightarrow[R_3 \leftarrow R_3 + 4R_1]{R_2 \leftarrow R_2 - 6R_1} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 & -5 \\ 0 & 2 & -1 & 5 \end{array} \right) \\ &\xrightarrow[R_1 \leftarrow -2R_1 + R_2]{R_3 \leftarrow R_3 + R_2} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 2 & 0 & -1 & -3 \\ 0 & 2 & -1 & 5 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right) \end{aligned}$$

Since we obtain a 0 row, the given points are collinear.  
The direction vector of the line is

$$\mathbf{m} = \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C} \equiv \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 3 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.1.12.2)$$

and the equation of a line is given by,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{x} &= \mathbf{A} + \kappa \mathbf{m} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + \kappa \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 3 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (4.1.12.3) \quad (4.1.12.4)$$

See Fig. 4.1.12.1.

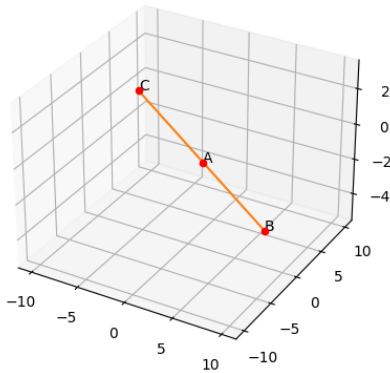


Fig. 4.1.12.1

b) In this case,

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 \\ -2 & 2 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{n} = \mathbf{1} \quad (4.1.12.5)$$

$$\begin{aligned} &\Rightarrow \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 & 1 \\ -2 & 2 & -1 & 1 \end{array} \right) \\ &\xrightarrow[R_3 \leftarrow R_3 + 2R_1]{R_2 \leftarrow R_2 - R_1} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & -1 & 3 \end{array} \right) \\ &\xrightarrow[R_3 \leftarrow R_3 - 4R_2]{R_1 \leftarrow R_1 - R_2} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -5 & 3 \end{array} \right) \\ &\xrightarrow[R_2 \leftarrow -5R_2 + R_3]{R_1 \leftarrow -5R_1 - R_3} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 5 & 0 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 5 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 5 & -3 \end{array} \right) \end{aligned}$$

Hence, the equation of the plane is

$$(2 \ 3 \ -3)\mathbf{x} = 5 \quad (4.1.12.6)$$

4.1.13 Find the equation of the plane through the points (2, 1, 0), (3, -2, -2) and (3, 1, 7).

4.1.14 A plane passes through the points (2, 0, 0), (0, 3, 0) and (0, 0, 4). The equation of the plane is \_\_\_\_\_.

4.1.15 If the intercept of a line between the coordinate axes is divided by the point (-5, 4) in the ratio 1:2 then find the equation of the line.

4.1.16 Find the equation of a line that cuts off equal intercepts on the coordinate axes and passes through the point (2, 3).

**Solution:** Let (a, 0) and (0, a) be the intercept points.

$$\mathbf{m} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ a \end{pmatrix} \equiv \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.1.16.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.1.16.2)$$

and the equation of the line is

$$(1 \ 1) \left( \mathbf{x} - \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \right) = 0 \quad (4.1.16.3)$$

$$\Rightarrow (1 \ 1)\mathbf{x} = 5 \quad (4.1.16.4)$$

See Fig. 4.1.16.1.

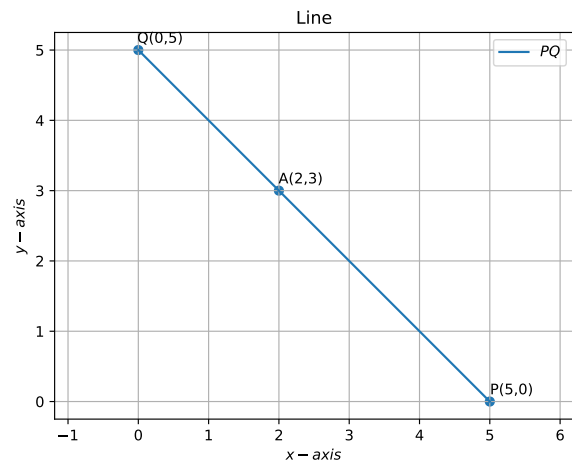


Fig. 4.1.16.1

4.1.17 Find the equation of a line passing through a point (2,2) and cutting off intercepts on the axes whose sum is 9.

**Solution:** Let the intercept points be

$$\mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{Q} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ b \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } \mathbf{R} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.1.17.1)$$

be the given point. Forming the collinearity matrix from (1.5.6),

$$(\mathbf{P} - \mathbf{Q} \quad \mathbf{P} - \mathbf{R}) = \begin{pmatrix} a & a-2 \\ -b & -2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.1.17.2)$$

which is singular if

$$ab - 2(a + b) = 0 \implies ab = 18 \quad (4.1.17.3)$$

$$\therefore a + b = 9. \quad (4.1.17.4)$$

$\therefore a, b$  are the roots of

$$x^2 - 9x + 18 = 0. \quad (4.1.17.5)$$

yielding

$$\begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.1.17.6)$$

Since

$$\mathbf{m} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ -b \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} b \\ a \end{pmatrix} \equiv \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.1.17.7)$$

Thus, the possible equations of the line are

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = 6 \quad (4.1.17.8)$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = 6 \quad (4.1.17.9)$$

See Fig. 4.1.17.1.

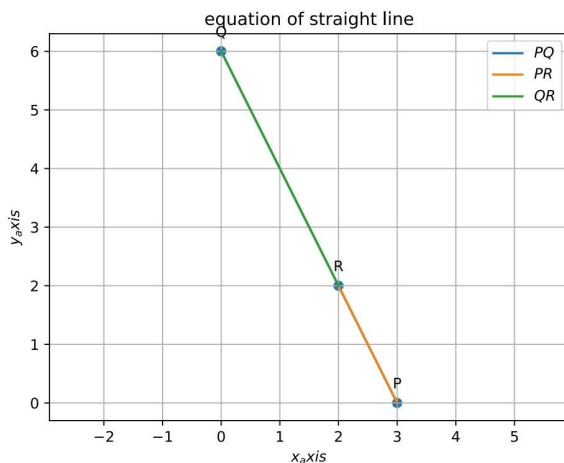


Fig. 4.1.17.1

**Solution:** From Problem 4.1.17,

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} b \\ a \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.1.18.1)$$

$$\implies \begin{pmatrix} b & a \end{pmatrix} \left( \mathbf{x} - \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix} \right) = 0 \quad (4.1.18.2)$$

$$\text{or, } \begin{pmatrix} b & a \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = 2ab. \quad (4.1.18.3)$$

is the desired line equation.

4.1.19 Find the equation of the lines which passes the point (3,4) and cuts off intercepts from the coordinate axes such that their sum is 14.

4.1.20 Find the equation of the straight line which passes through the point (1, -2) and cuts off equal intercepts from axes.

4.1.21 Point  $\mathbf{R}(h, k)$  divides a line segment between the axes in the ratio 1: 2. Find the equation of the line.

**Solution:** Choosing the intercept points in Problem 4.1.17,

$$\mathbf{R} = \frac{2\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}}{3} \implies \begin{pmatrix} h \\ k \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{3} \begin{pmatrix} 2a \\ b \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.1.21.1)$$

$$\text{or, } \begin{pmatrix} b \\ a \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{n} \equiv \begin{pmatrix} 2k \\ h \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.1.21.2)$$

Thus, the equation of the line is given by,

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2k & h \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 2k & h \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} h \\ k \end{pmatrix} = 3hk \quad (4.1.21.3)$$

4.1.22 Find the equation of the line which passes through the point (-4,3) and the portion of the line intercepted between the axes is divided internally in ratio 5:3 by this point.

4.1.23 Consider the following population and year graph. Find the slope of the line AB and using it, find what will be the population in the year 2010.

**Solution:** The direction vector of the line in Fig. 4.1.23.1

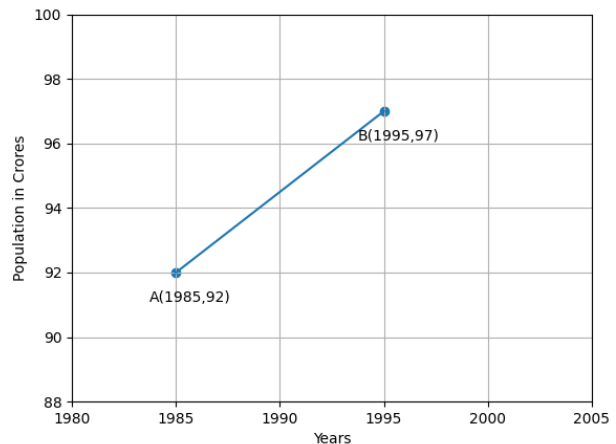


Fig. 4.1.23.1

4.1.18  $P(a, b)$  is the mid-point of the line segment between axes.

Show that the equation of the line is  $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 2$



is

$$\mathbf{m} = \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.1.23.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.1.23.2)$$

The equation of the line is then given by

$$\mathbf{n}^T(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{A}) = 0 \quad (4.1.23.3)$$

$$\Rightarrow (1 \quad -2)\mathbf{x} = 1801 \quad (4.1.23.4)$$

$$\Rightarrow (1 \quad -2) \begin{pmatrix} 2010 \\ y \end{pmatrix} = 1801 \quad (4.1.23.5)$$

$$\Rightarrow y = \frac{209}{2} \quad (4.1.23.6)$$

4.1.24 Slope of a line which cuts off intercepts of equal length on the axes is

- a) -1
- b) -0
- c) 2
- d)  $\sqrt{3}$

4.1.25 The tangent of angle between the lines whose intercepts on the axes are  $a, -b$  and  $b, -a$ , respectively, is

- a)  $\frac{a^2-b^2}{ab}$
- b)  $\frac{b^2-a^2}{2ab}$
- c)  $\frac{b^2-a^2}{2ab}$
- d) none of these

4.1.26 If the coordinates of middle point of the portion of a line intercepted between the coordinate axes is (3,2), then the equation of the line will be

- a)  $2x + 3y = 12$
- b)  $3x + 2y = 12$
- c)  $4x - 3y = 6$
- d)  $5x - 2y = 10$

4.1.27 If the line  $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$  passes the points (2,-3) and (4,-5), then  $(a, b)$  is

- a) (1,1)
- b) (-1,1)
- c) (1,-1)
- d) (-1,-1)

## 4.2 Parallel

4.2.1 Find the vector equation of the line passing through  $(1 \ 2 \ 3)^T$  and parallel to the planes  $(1 \ -1 \ 2)\mathbf{x} = 5$  and  $(3 \ 1 \ 1)\mathbf{x} = 6$ .

**Solution:** The direction vector of the line is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 2 \\ 3 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{m} &= 0 \xrightarrow{R_2 \rightarrow -\frac{3}{2}R_1 + \frac{1}{2}R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & -\frac{5}{4} \end{pmatrix} \\ &\xrightarrow{R_1 \rightarrow R_1 + R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & \frac{3}{4} \\ 0 & 1 & -\frac{5}{4} \end{pmatrix} \\ &\Rightarrow \mathbf{m} = \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 5 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore$  the equation of the line is

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 5 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.2.1.1)$$

4.2.2 Find the equation of the plane with an intercept 3 on the Y-axis and parallel to ZOX-Plane.

**Solution:** The normal vector to the ZOX plane is

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (4.2.2.1)$$

Since, Y-axis has the intercept 3, the desired plane passes through the point

$$\mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 3 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (4.2.2.2)$$

Thus, the equation of the plane is given by,

$$\mathbf{n}^T(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{P}) = 0 \quad (4.2.2.3)$$

$$\Rightarrow (0 \ 1 \ 0)\mathbf{x} = 3 \quad (4.2.2.4)$$

See Fig. 4.2.2.1.

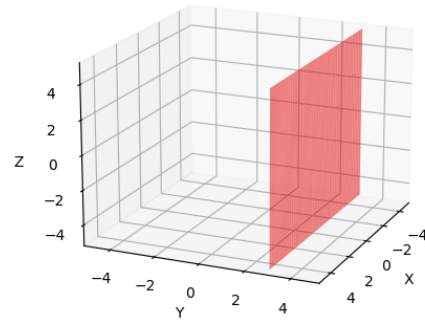


Fig. 4.2.2.1

4.2.3 Prove that the line through the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  and parallel to the line  $Ax + By + C = 0$  is  $A(x - x_1) + B(y - y_1) = 0$ .

**Solution:** The equation of the desired line is

$$(A \ B) \left( \mathbf{x} - \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ y_1 \end{pmatrix} \right) = 0 \quad (4.2.3.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow (A \ B)\mathbf{x} = Ax_1 + By_1 \quad (4.2.3.2)$$

4.2.4 Find the equation of the line parallel to the line  $3x - 4y + 2 = 0$  and passing through the point  $(-2, 3)$ .

**Solution:**

$$(3 \ -4)\mathbf{x} = (3 \ -4) \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} = -18 \quad (4.2.4.1)$$

is the required equation of the line.

4.2.5 Find the equation of the line through the point (0,2)

making an angle  $\frac{2\pi}{3}$  with the positive X-axis. Also find the equation of the line parallel to it and crossing the Y-axis at a distance of 2 units below the origin.

**Solution:** The equation of the first line is

$$(\sqrt{3} \ 1) \left( \mathbf{x} - \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \right) = 0 \quad (4.2.5.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow (\sqrt{3} \ 1) \mathbf{x} = 2 \quad (4.2.5.2)$$

The equation of the second line is

$$(\sqrt{3} \ 1) \left( \mathbf{x} - \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} \right) = 0 \quad (4.2.5.3)$$

$$\Rightarrow (\sqrt{3} \ 1) \mathbf{x} = -2 \quad (4.2.5.4)$$

See Fig. 4.2.5.1.

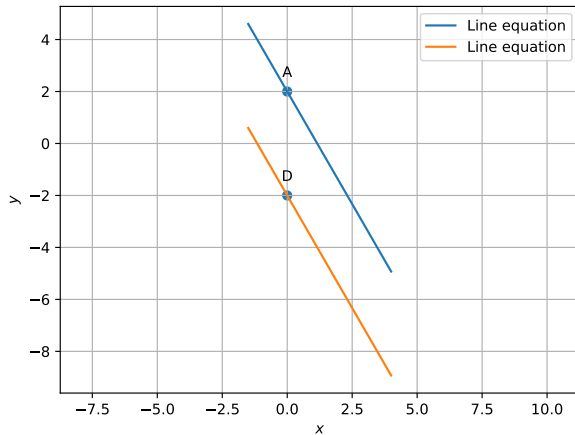


Fig. 4.2.5.1

4.2.6 Find the vector equation of the line which is parallel to the vector  $3\hat{i} - 2\hat{j} + 6\hat{k}$  and passes through the point  $(1, -2, 3)$ .

4.2.7 Find the equations of the line passing through the point  $(3, 0, 1)$  and parallel to the planes  $x + 2y = 0$  and  $3y - z = 0$ .

4.2.8 The equation of a line, which is parallel to  $2\hat{i} + \hat{j} + 3\hat{k}$  and passes through the point  $(5, -2, 4)$  is  $\frac{x-5}{2} = \frac{y+2}{-1} = \frac{z-4}{3}$ .

4.2.9 The value of  $\lambda$  for which the vectors  $3\hat{i} - 6\hat{j} + \hat{k}$  and  $2\hat{i} - 4\hat{j} + \lambda\hat{k}$  are parallel is

- $\frac{2}{3}$
- $\frac{3}{2}$
- $\frac{5}{2}$
- $\frac{2}{5}$

4.2.10 Equation of the line passing through  $(1, 2)$  and parallel to the line  $y = 3x - 1$  is

- $y + 2 = x + 1$
- $y + 2 = 3(x + 1)$
- $y - 2 = 3(x - 1)$
- $y - 2 = x - 1$

### 4.3 Perpendicular

4.3.1 Find the values of  $\theta$  and  $p$ , if the equation  $x \cos \theta + y \sin \theta = p$  is the normal form of the line  $\sqrt{3}x + y + 2 = 0$ .

**Solution:**

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{3} \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, c = -2 \quad (4.3.1.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow \theta = \tan^{-1}(\sqrt{3}) = \frac{\pi}{3}, p = \frac{|c|}{\|\mathbf{n}\|} = 1 \quad (4.3.1.2)$$

See Fig. 4.3.1.1.

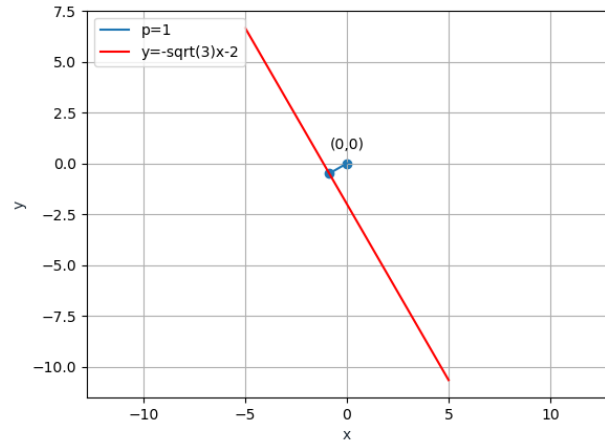


Fig. 4.3.1.1

4.3.2 Reduce the following equations into normal form. Find their perpendicular distances from the origin and angle between perpendicular and the positive x-axis.

- $x - \sqrt{3}y + 8 = 0$
- $y - 2 = 0$
- $x - y = 4$

**Solution:** See Table 4.3.2. (4.4.2.6) was used for computing the distance from the origin.

	$\mathbf{n}$	Angle	$c$	Distance
a)	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -\sqrt{3} \end{pmatrix}$	$\tan^{-1}(-\sqrt{3}) = \frac{2\pi}{3}$	-8	4
b)	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\tan^{-1} \infty = \frac{\pi}{2}$	2	2
c)	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\tan^{-1}(-1) = \frac{3\pi}{4}$	4	$2\sqrt{2}$

TABLE 4.3.2

4.3.3 In each of the following cases, determine the direction cosines of the normal to the plane and the distance from the origin.

- $z = 2$
- $x + y + z = 1$
- $2x + 3y - z = 5$
- $5y + 8 = 0$

**Solution:** See Table 4.3.3. (4.4.2.6) was used for computing the distance from the origin.

	<b>n</b>	<b>c</b>	Distance
a)	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$	2	2
b)	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$	1	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$
c)	$\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$	5	$\frac{5}{\sqrt{14}}$
d)	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -5 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$	8	$\frac{8}{5}$

TABLE 4.3.3

4.3.4 Find the distance of the point  $(-1, 1)$  from the line  $12(x + 6) = 5(y - 2)$ .

**Solution:**

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 12 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix}, c = -82 \quad (4.3.4.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow d = \frac{\left| \begin{pmatrix} 12 & -5 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} - (-82) \right|}{\sqrt{12^2 + (-5)^2}} = 5 \quad (4.3.4.2)$$

See Fig. 4.3.4.1.

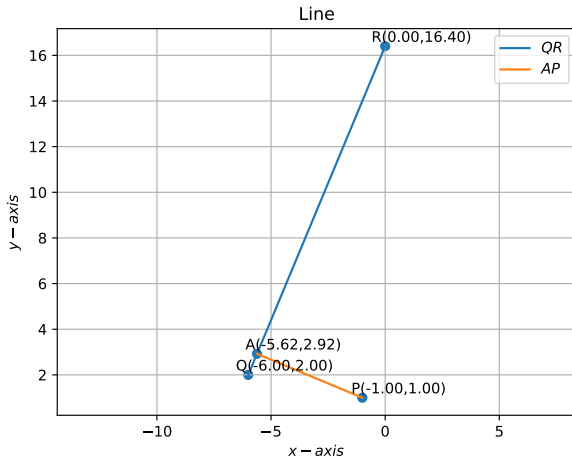


Fig. 4.3.4.1

4.3.5 Find the coordinates of the foot of the perpendicular from  $(-1, 3)$  to the line  $3x - 4y - 16 = 0$ .

**Solution:** Substituting

$$\mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}, c = 16 \quad (4.3.5.1)$$

in (4.4.3.1), the desired foot of the perpendicular is then

given by

$$\begin{pmatrix} 4 & 3 \\ 3 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{Q} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 3 \\ 3 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 16 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.3.5.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 3 & 5 \\ 3 & -4 & 16 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_2 = R_2 - \frac{3}{4}R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 3 & 5 \\ 0 & -\frac{25}{4} & \frac{49}{4} \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.3.5.3)$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_2 = \frac{-4}{25}} \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 3 & 5 \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{-49}{25} \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_1 = \frac{1}{4}R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \frac{3}{4} & \frac{5}{4} \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{-49}{25} \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.3.5.4)$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_1 = R_1 - \frac{3}{4}R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & \frac{68}{25} \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{-49}{25} \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow \mathbf{Q} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{68}{25} \\ \frac{-49}{25} \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.3.5.5)$$

See Fig. 4.3.5.1.

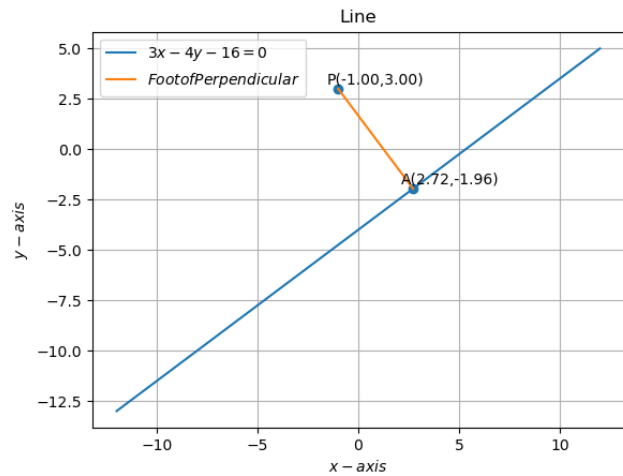


Fig. 4.3.5.1

4.3.6 If  $p$  and  $q$  are the lengths of perpendiculars from the origin to the lines  $x \cos \theta - y \sin \theta = k \cos 2\theta$  and  $x \sec \theta + y \csc \theta = k$ , respectively, prove that  $p^2 + 4q^2 = k^2$

**Solution:** The line parameters are

$$\mathbf{n}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta \\ -\sin \theta \end{pmatrix}, c_1 = k \cos 2\theta \quad (4.3.6.1)$$

$$\mathbf{n}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} \sin \theta \\ \cos \theta \end{pmatrix}, c_2 = \frac{1}{2}k \sin 2\theta \quad (4.3.6.2)$$

From (4.4.2.6),

$$p = \frac{|\mathbf{n}_1^T \mathbf{x} - c_1|}{\|\mathbf{n}_1\|} = |k \cos 2\theta| \quad (4.3.6.3)$$

$$q = \frac{|\mathbf{n}_2^T \mathbf{x} - c_2|}{\|\mathbf{n}_2\|} = \left| \frac{1}{2}k \sin 2\theta \right| \quad (4.3.6.4)$$

$$\Rightarrow p^2 + 4q^2 = k^2 \quad (4.3.6.5)$$

4.3.7 In the triangle  $ABC$  with vertices  $A(2, 3)$ ,  $B(4, -1)$  and  $C(1, 2)$ , find the equation and length of altitude from the vertex  $A$ .

**Solution:**

a) The normal vector of the altitude from  $A$  is,

$$\mathbf{m}_{BC} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \therefore \mathbf{n}_{BC} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (4.3.7.1)$$

The equation of the desired altitude is given by

$$\mathbf{m}_{BC}^T \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{m}_{BC}^T \mathbf{A} \quad (4.3.7.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = -1 \quad (4.3.7.3)$$

b) The equation of line  $BC$  is given by,

$$\mathbf{n}_{BC}^T \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{n}_{BC}^T \mathbf{B} \quad (4.3.7.4)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = 3 \quad (4.3.7.5)$$

From (4.4.2.6), the length of the desired altitude is

$$d = \sqrt{2} \quad (4.3.7.6)$$

See Fig. 4.3.7.1.

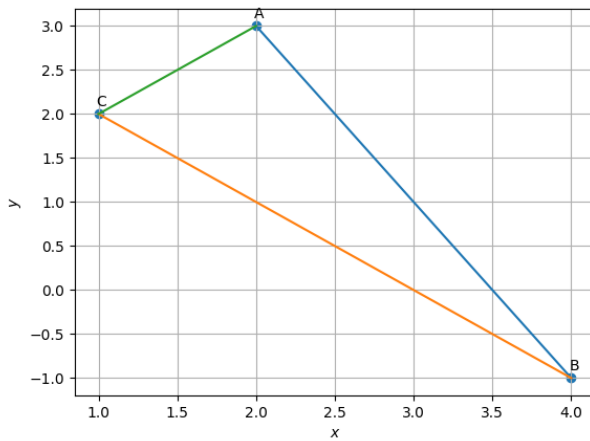


Fig. 4.3.7.1

4.3.8 If  $p$  is the length of perpendicular from origin to the line whose intercepts on the axes are  $a$  and  $b$ , then show that

$$\frac{1}{p^2} = \frac{1}{a^2} + \frac{1}{b^2} \quad (4.3.8.1)$$

**Solution:** Let the intercept points be

$$\begin{pmatrix} a \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ b \end{pmatrix}, \therefore \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} b \\ a \end{pmatrix}, \quad (4.3.8.2)$$

The line equation is,

$$\begin{pmatrix} b & a \end{pmatrix} \left( \mathbf{x} - \begin{pmatrix} a \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \right) = 0 \quad (4.3.8.3)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} b & a \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = ab \quad (4.3.8.4)$$

From (4.4.2.6), the perpendicular distance from the origin to the line is

$$p = \frac{ab}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} \Rightarrow (4.3.8.1) \quad (4.3.8.5)$$

4.3.9 Find the points on the  $x$ -axis, whose distances from the line  $\frac{x}{3} + \frac{y}{4} = 1$  are 4 units.

**Solution:** Let the desired point be

$$\mathbf{P} = x\mathbf{e}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.3.9.1)$$

From the distance formula,

$$d = \frac{|\mathbf{n}^T \mathbf{P} - c|}{\|\mathbf{n}\|} = \frac{|\mathbf{x}\mathbf{n}^T \mathbf{e}_1 - c|}{\|\mathbf{n}\|} \quad (4.3.9.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow x = \frac{\pm d \|\mathbf{n}\| + c}{\mathbf{n}^T \mathbf{e}_1} \quad (4.3.9.3)$$

Substituting

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}, c = 12, d = 4, \quad (4.3.9.4)$$

$$x = 8, -2 \quad (4.3.9.5)$$

See Fig. 4.3.9.1.

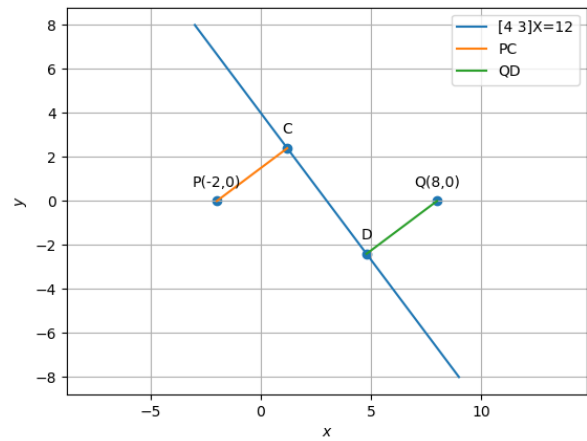


Fig. 4.3.9.1

4.3.10 What are the points on the  $y$ -axis whose distance from the line  $\frac{x}{3} + \frac{y}{4} = 1$  is 4 units.

**Solution:** Following the approach in Problem 4.3.9,

$$y = \frac{\pm d \|\mathbf{n}\| + c}{\mathbf{n}^T \mathbf{e}_2} = \frac{32}{3}, \frac{-8}{3}. \quad (4.3.10.1)$$

See Fig. 4.3.10.1.

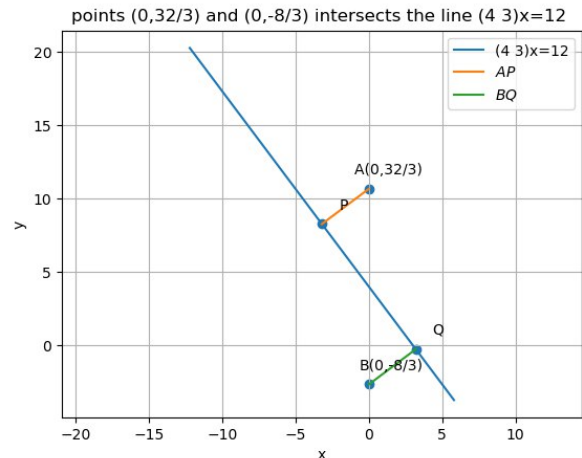


Fig. 4.3.10.1

4.3.11 Find perpendicular distance from the origin to the line joining the points  $(\cos \theta, \sin \theta)$  and  $(\cos \phi, \sin \phi)$ .

**Solution:** The equation of the line is

$$(\sin \phi - \sin \theta \quad \cos \theta - \cos \phi) \mathbf{x} = \sin(\phi - \theta) \quad (4.3.11.1)$$

and from (4.4.2.6), the distance is

$$d = \frac{\sin(\phi - \theta)}{2 \sin\left(\frac{\phi - \theta}{2}\right)} = \cos\left(\frac{\phi - \theta}{2}\right) \quad (4.3.11.2)$$

4.3.12 Find the distance between parallel lines

a)  $15x + 8y - 34 = 0$  and  $15x + 8y + 31 = 0$

b)  $l(x + y) + p = 0$  and  $l(x + y) - r = 0$

**Solution:** From (4.4.4.1), the desired values are available in Table 4.3.12.

	$\mathbf{n}$	$c_1$	$c_2$	$d$
a)	$\begin{pmatrix} 15 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix}$	34	-31	$\frac{65}{17}$
b)	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$-\frac{p}{l}$	$\frac{r}{l}$	$\frac{ p-r }{l\sqrt{2}}$

TABLE 4.3.12

4.3.13 Find the equation of line which is equidistant from parallel lines  $9x + 6y - 7 = 0$  and  $3x + 2y + 6 = 0$ .

**Solution:** Given

$$c_1 = \frac{7}{3}, c_2 = -6. \quad (4.3.13.1)$$

From (4.4.4.1), we need to find  $c$  such that,

$$|c - c_1| = |c - c_2| \implies c = \frac{c_1 + c_2}{2} = -\frac{11}{6}. \quad (4.3.13.2)$$

Hence, the desired equation is

$$(3 \quad 2) \mathbf{x} = -\frac{11}{6} \quad (4.3.13.3)$$

See Fig. 4.3.13.1.

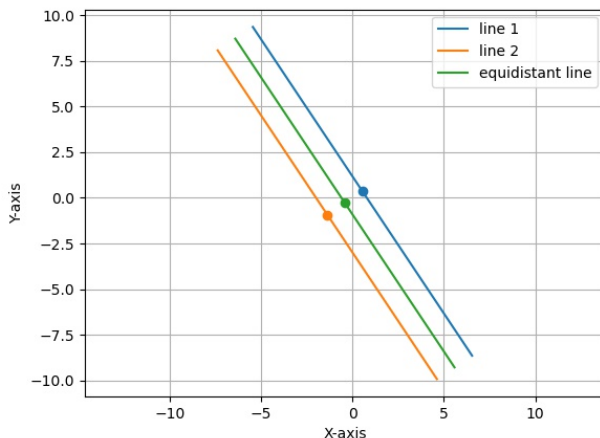


Fig. 4.3.13.1

4.3.14 Prove that the products of the lengths of the perpendiculars drawn from the points  $(\sqrt{a^2 - b^2} \quad 0)^\top$  and  $(-\sqrt{a^2 - b^2} \quad 0)^\top$  to the line  $\frac{x}{a} \cos \theta + \frac{y}{b} \sin \theta = 1$  is  $b^2$ .

**Solution:** The input parameters for (4.4.2.6) are

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta \\ \frac{a}{\sin \theta} \end{pmatrix}, c = 1, \mathbf{P} = \pm \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{a^2 - b^2} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.3.14.1)$$

The product of the distances is

$$d_1 d_2 = \frac{|(\mathbf{n}^\top \mathbf{P})^2 - c^2|}{\|\mathbf{n}\|} = \frac{\left| \frac{\cos^2 \theta (a^2 - b^2)}{a^2} - 1 \right|}{\frac{\cos^2 \theta}{a^2} + \frac{\sin^2 \theta}{b^2}} \quad (4.3.14.2)$$

$$= \frac{(b^2 \cos^2 \theta + a^2 \sin^2 \theta) a^2 b^2}{(b^2 \cos^2 \theta + a^2 \sin^2 \theta) a^2} = b^2 \quad (4.3.14.3)$$

4.3.15 Find the equation of line drawn perpendicular to the line  $\frac{x}{4} + \frac{y}{6} = 1$  through the point where it meets the y-axis

**Solution:** The given line parameters are

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, c = 12, \mathbf{m} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (4.3.15.1)$$

and the point on the y-axis is

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (4.3.15.2)$$

Thus, the equation of the desired line is

$$\mathbf{m}^\top (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{A}) = 0 \quad (4.3.15.3)$$

$$\implies (-2 \quad 3) \mathbf{x} = -18 \quad (4.3.15.4)$$

See Fig. 4.3.15.1.

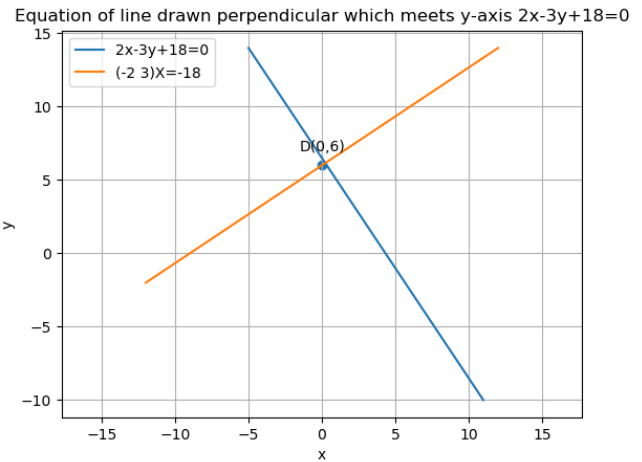


Fig. 4.3.15.1

4.3.16 Find the equation of line whose perpendicular distance from the origin is 5 units and the angle made by the perpendicular with the positive x-axis is  $30^\circ$ .

**Solution:** From (4.4.1.3), Thus, the equation of lines are

$$\left( \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \quad \frac{1}{2} \right) \mathbf{x} = \pm 5 \quad (4.3.16.1)$$

See Fig. 4.3.16.1.

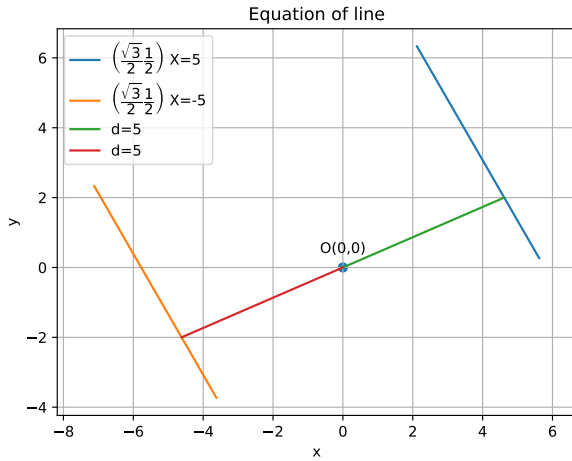


Fig. 4.3.16.1

4.3.17 Find the equation of the line passing through  $(-3, 5)$  and perpendicular to the line through the points  $(2, 5)$  and  $(-3, 6)$ .

**Solution:** The normal vector is

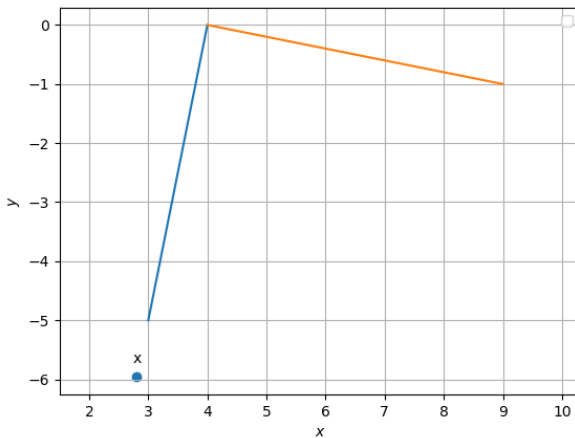


Fig. 4.3.17.1

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.3.17.1)$$

Thus, the equation of the line is

$$\begin{pmatrix} 5 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \left( \mathbf{x} - \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \right) = 0 \quad (4.3.17.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 5 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = -20 \quad (4.3.17.3)$$

See Fig. 4.3.17.1.

4.3.18 The perpendicular from the origin to a line meets it at the point  $(-2, 9)$ . Find the equation of the line.

**Solution:** It is obvious that the normal vector to the line is

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -9 \end{pmatrix} - \mathbf{0} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -9 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.3.18.1)$$

Hence, the equation of the line is

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -9 \end{pmatrix} \left( \mathbf{x} - \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -9 \end{pmatrix} \right) = 0 \quad (4.3.18.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -9 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = 85 \quad (4.3.18.3)$$

See Fig. 4.3.18.1.

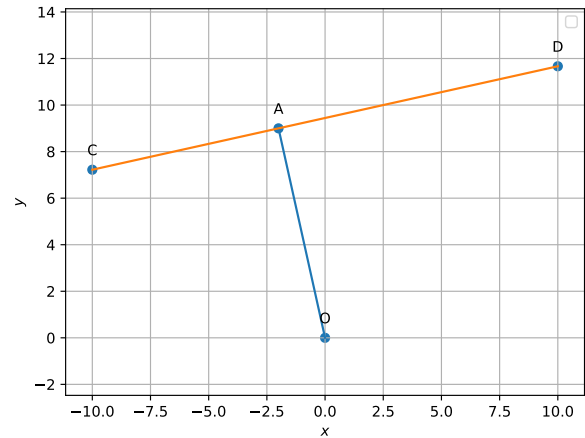


Fig. 4.3.18.1

4.3.19 Find the equation of line perpendicular to the line  $x - 7y + 5 = 0$  and having  $x$  intercept 3

**Solution:** The desired equation is

$$\begin{pmatrix} 7 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \left( \mathbf{x} - \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \right) = 0 \quad (4.3.19.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 7 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = 21 \quad (4.3.19.2)$$

See Fig. 4.3.19.1.

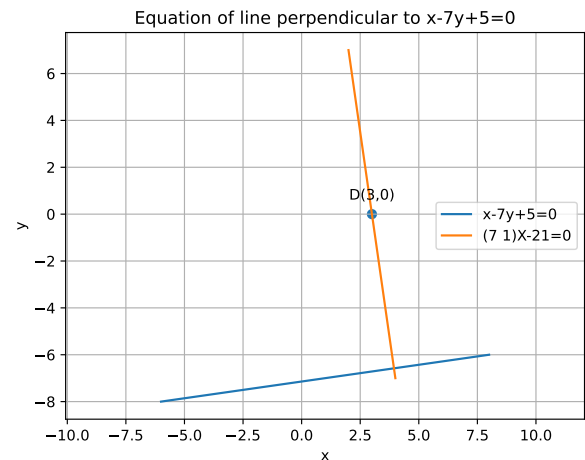


Fig. 4.3.19.1

4.3.20 Find the equation of the line passing through the point

$(1, 2, -4)$  and perpendicular to the two lines

$$\frac{x-8}{3} = \frac{y+19}{-16} = \frac{z-10}{7} \text{ and} \quad (4.3.20.1)$$

$$\frac{x-15}{3} = \frac{y-29}{8} = \frac{z-5}{-5} \quad (4.3.20.2)$$

**Solution:** The direction vector of the desired line is given by

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -16 & 7 \\ 3 & 8 & -5 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{m} = 0 \xrightarrow{R_2 \leftarrow R_2 - R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -16 & 7 \\ 0 & 24 & -12 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_1 \leftarrow R_1 + \frac{2}{3}R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 24 & -12 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_2 \leftarrow R_2/12} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 2 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

yielding

$$\mathbf{m} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.3.20.3)$$

Hence the vector equation of the line passing through  $(1, 2, -4)$  is,

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix} + \kappa \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.3.20.4)$$

4.3.21 The perpendicular from the origin to the line  $y = mx + c$  meets it at the point  $(-1, 2)$ . Find the values of  $m$  and  $c$ .

**Solution:** From Problem 4.3.18,

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow m = \frac{1}{2} \quad (4.3.21.1)$$

Also, from the given equation of the line and the given point,

$$c = (-m \ 1) \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \frac{5}{2} \quad (4.3.21.2)$$

See Fig. 4.3.21.1.

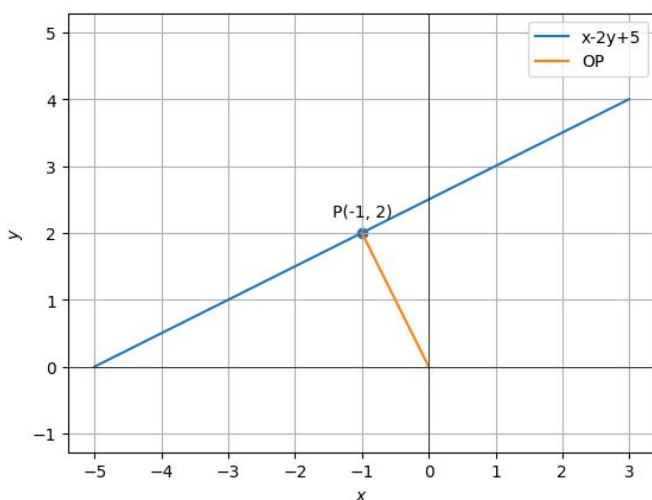


Fig. 4.3.21.1: Graph

4.3.22 A line perpendicular to the line segment joining the points  $P(1, 0)$  and  $Q(2, 3)$  divides it in the ratio  $1 : n$ . Find the equation of the line.

**Solution:** The direction vector of  $PQ$  is

$$\mathbf{Q} - \mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.3.22.1)$$

Using section formula,

$$\mathbf{R} = \frac{\mathbf{Q} + n\mathbf{P}}{1+n} \quad (4.3.22.2)$$

is the point of intersection. The equation of the desired line is

$$\mathbf{m}^T (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{R}) = 0 \quad (4.3.22.3)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{2+n}{1+n} \\ \frac{1+\frac{1}{3}n}{1+n} \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.3.22.4)$$

$$= \frac{11+n}{1+n} \quad (4.3.22.5)$$

See Fig. 4.3.22.1.

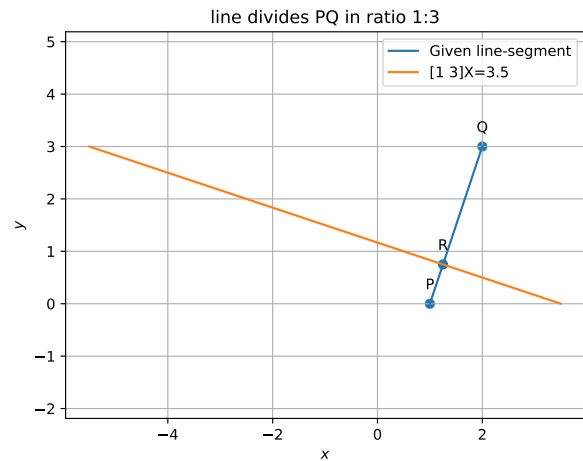


Fig. 4.3.22.1

4.3.23 Find the vector equation of a plane which is at a distance of 7 units from the origin and normal to the vector  $3\hat{i} + 5\hat{j} - 6\hat{k}$ .

**Solution:** From the given information,

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \\ -6 \end{pmatrix}, d = \frac{|c|}{\|\mathbf{n}\|} = 7 \quad (4.3.23.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow c = \pm 7\sqrt{70} \quad (4.3.23.2)$$

4.3.24 Find the equation of a plane which is at a distance  $3\sqrt{3}$  units from origin and the normal to which is equally inclined to the coordinate axis.

4.3.25 If the line drawn from the point  $(-2, -1, -3)$  meets a plane at right angle at the point  $(1, -3, 3)$ , find the equation of the plane.

4.3.26 O is the origin and A is  $(a, b, c)$ . Find the direction cosines of the line OA and the equation of the plane through A at right angle to OA.

4.3.27 Two systems of rectangular axis have the same origin. If a plane cuts them at distances  $a, b, c$  and  $a', b', c'$ ,

respectively, from the origin, prove that

$$\frac{1}{a^2} + \frac{1}{b^2} + \frac{1}{c^2} = \frac{1}{a'^2} + \frac{1}{b'^2} + \frac{1}{c'^2}$$

4.3.28 Find the equation of the plane through the points  $(2, 1, -1)$  and  $(-1, 3, 4)$ , and perpendicular to the plane  $x - 2y + 4z = 10$ .

4.3.29 If the foot of perpendicular drawn from the origin to a plane is  $(5, -3, -2)$ , then the equation of the plane is  $\vec{r} \cdot (5\hat{i} - 3\hat{j} - 2\hat{k}) = 38$ .

4.3.30  $P(0, 2)$  is the point of intersection of y-axis and perpendicular bisector of line segment joining the points  $A(-1, 1)$  and  $B(3, 3)$ .

4.3.31 The distance of the point  $P(2, 3)$  from the x-axis is

- a) 2
- b) 3
- c) 1
- d) 5

4.3.32 Find the foot of perpendicular from the point  $(2, 3, -8)$  to the line

$$\frac{4-x}{2} = \frac{y}{6} = \frac{1-z}{3}.$$

Also, find the perpendicular distance from the given point to the line.

4.3.33 Find the distance of a point  $(2, 4, -1)$  from the line

$$\frac{x+5}{1} = \frac{y+3}{4} = \frac{z-6}{-9}$$

4.3.34 Find the length and the foot of perpendicular from the point  $\left(1, \frac{3}{2}, 2\right)$  to the plane  $2x - 2y + 4z + 5 = 0$ .

4.3.35 Show that the points  $(\hat{i} - \hat{j} + 3\hat{k})$  and  $3(\hat{i} + \hat{j} + \hat{k})$  are equidistant from the plane  $\vec{r} \cdot (5\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} - 7\hat{k}) + 9 = 0$  and lie on opposite side of it.

4.3.36 The distance of the plane  $\vec{r} \cdot \left(\frac{2}{7}\hat{i} + \frac{3}{7}\hat{j} - \frac{6}{7}\hat{k}\right) = 1$  from the origin is

- a) 1
- b) 7
- c)  $\frac{1}{7}$
- d) None of these

4.3.37 Equation of the line passing through the point  $(a \cos^3 \theta, a \sin^3 \theta)$  and perpendicular to the line  $x \sec \theta + y \csc \theta = a$  is  $x \cos \theta - y \sin \theta = a \sin 2\theta$ .

4.3.38 Find the equation of the line passing through the point  $(5, 2)$  and perpendicular to the line joining the points  $(2, 3)$  and  $(3, -1)$ .

4.3.39 Find the points on the line  $x + y = 4$  which lie at a unit distance from the line  $4x + 3y = 10$ .

4.3.40 Find the equation of a straight line on which length of perpendicular from the origin is four units and the line makes an angle of  $120^\circ$  with the positive direction of x-axis.

4.3.41 Find the equation of one of the sides of an isosceles right angled triangle whose hypotenuse is given by  $3x + 4y = 4$  and the opposite vertex of the hypotenuse is  $(2, 2)$ .

4.3.42 In what direction should a line be drawn through the point  $(1, 2)$  so that its point of intersection with line  $x + y = 4$  is at a distance  $\sqrt{63}$ .

4.3.43 The equation of the straight line passing through the point  $(3, 2)$  and perpendicular to the line  $y = x$  is

- a)  $x - y = 5$
- b)  $x + y = 5$
- c)  $x + y = 1$
- d)  $x - y = 1$

4.3.44 The equation of the line passing through the point  $(1, 2)$  and perpendicular to the line  $x + y + 1 = 0$  is

- a)  $y - x + 1 = 0$
- b)  $y - x - 1 = 0$
- c)  $y - x + 2 = 0$
- d)  $y - x - 1 = 0$

4.3.45 The distance of the point of intersection of the lines  $2x - 3y + 5 = 0$  and  $3x + 4y = 0$  from the line  $5x - 2y = 0$  is

- a)  $\frac{130}{17\sqrt{29}}$
- b)  $\frac{13}{7\sqrt{29}}$
- c)  $\frac{130}{7}$
- d) none of these

4.3.46 The equations of the lines passing through the point  $(1, 0)$  and at a distance  $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$  from the origin, are

- a)  $\sqrt{3}x + y - \sqrt{3} = 0$ ,  $\sqrt{3}x - y - \sqrt{3} = 0$
- b)  $\sqrt{3}x + y + \sqrt{3} = 0$ ,  $\sqrt{3}x - y + \sqrt{3} = 0$
- c)  $x + \sqrt{3}y - \sqrt{3} = 0$ ,  $\sqrt{3}y - \sqrt{3} = 0$
- d) None of these.

4.3.47 The distance between the lines  $y = mx + c$ , and  $y = mx + c^2$  is

- a)  $\frac{c_1 - c_2}{\sqrt{m+1}}$
- b)  $\frac{|c_1 - c_2|}{\sqrt{1+m^2}}$
- c)  $\frac{c^2 - c_1}{\sqrt{1+m^2}}$
- d) 0

4.3.48 The coordinates of the foot of perpendiculars from the point  $(2, 3)$  on the line  $y = 3x + 4$  is given by

- a)  $\frac{37}{10}, \frac{-1}{10}$
- b)  $\frac{-1}{10}, \frac{37}{10}$
- c)  $\frac{10}{37}, -10$
- d)  $\frac{2}{3}, \frac{-1}{3}$

4.3.49 A point equidistant from the lines  $4x + 3y + 10 = 0$ ,  $5x - 12y + 26 = 0$  and  $7x + 24y - 50 = 0$  is

- a)  $(1, -1)$
- b)  $(1, 1)$
- c)  $(0, 0)$
- d)  $(0, 1)$

4.3.50 A line passes through  $(2, 2)$  and is perpendicular to the line  $3x + y = 3$ . Its y-intercept is

- a)  $\frac{1}{2}$
- b)  $\frac{2}{3}$
- c) 1
- d)  $\frac{4}{3}$

4.3.51 The ratio in which the line  $3x + 4y + 2 = 0$  divides the distance between the lines  $3x + 4y + 5 = 0$  and  $3x + 4y - 5 = 0$  is



- a) 1:2  
b) 3:7  
c) 2:3  
d) 2:5

#### 4.4 Formulae

4.4.1. Let the perpendicular distance from the origin to a line be  $p$  and the angle made by the perpendicular with the positive  $x$ -axis be  $\theta$ . Then

$$p \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta \\ \sin \theta \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.4.1.1)$$

is a point on the line as well as the normal vector. Hence, the equation of the line is

$$p \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & \sin \theta \end{pmatrix} \left\{ \mathbf{x} - p \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta \\ \sin \theta \end{pmatrix} \right\} = 0 \quad (4.4.1.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow (\cos \theta \quad \sin \theta) \mathbf{x} = p \quad (4.4.1.3)$$

4.4.2. Let  $\mathbf{Q}$  be the foot of the perpendicular from  $\mathbf{P}$  to the line

$$\mathbf{n}^T \mathbf{x} = c \quad (4.4.2.1)$$

From (1.1.4.1)

$$\mathbf{Q} = \mathbf{P} + k\mathbf{n} \quad (4.4.2.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow PQ = \|\mathbf{Q} - \mathbf{P}\| = |k| \|\mathbf{n}\| \quad (4.4.2.3)$$

is the distance from  $\mathbf{Q}$  to the line in (4.4.2.1). From (4.4.2.2),

$$\mathbf{n}^T \mathbf{Q} = \mathbf{n}^T \mathbf{P} + k \|\mathbf{n}\|^2 \quad (4.4.2.4)$$

$$\Rightarrow |k| = \frac{|\mathbf{n}^T (\mathbf{Q} - \mathbf{P})|}{\|\mathbf{n}\|^2} \quad (4.4.2.5)$$

$$\Rightarrow PQ = |k| \|\mathbf{n}\| = \frac{|\mathbf{n}^T \mathbf{P} - c|}{\|\mathbf{n}\|} \quad (4.4.2.6)$$

upon substituting from (4.4.2.3).

4.4.3. The foot of the perpendicular is given by

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{m} & \mathbf{n} \end{pmatrix}^T \mathbf{Q} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{m}^T \mathbf{P} \\ c \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.4.3.1)$$

4.4.4. The distance between the parallel lines

$$\mathbf{n}^T \mathbf{x} = c_1 \quad (4.4.4.1)$$

$$\mathbf{n}^T \mathbf{x} = c_2$$

is given by

$$d = \frac{|c_1 - c_2|}{\|\mathbf{n}\|} \quad (4.4.4.2)$$

#### 4.5 Angle

4.5.1 Two lines passing through the point (2, 3) intersect each other at an angle of  $60^\circ$ . If slope of one line is 2, find the equation of the other line.

**Solution:** Using the scalar product

$$\cos 60^\circ = \frac{1}{2} = \frac{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ m \end{pmatrix}}{\sqrt{5} \sqrt{m^2 + 1}} \quad (4.5.1.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow 11m^2 + 16m - 1 = 0 \quad (4.5.1.2)$$

$$\text{or, } m = \frac{-8 \pm 5\sqrt{3}}{11} \quad (4.5.1.3)$$

So, the desired equation of the line is

$$\left( \frac{-8 \pm 5\sqrt{3}}{11} \quad -1 \right) \mathbf{x} = \left( \frac{-8 \pm 5\sqrt{3}}{11} \quad -1 \right) \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.5.1.4)$$

$$= \frac{-49 \pm 16\sqrt{3}}{11} \quad (4.5.1.5)$$

See Fig. 4.5.1.1.

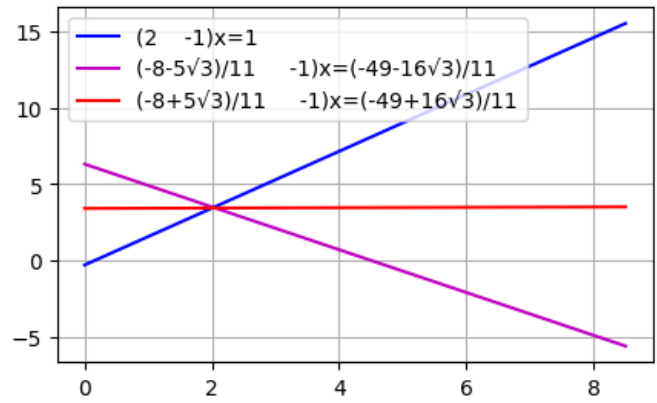


Fig. 4.5.1.1

4.5.2 Find the equation of the lines through the point (3, 2) which make an angle of  $45^\circ$  with the line  $x-2y=3$ .

**Solution:** Following the approach in Problem 4.5.1,

$$\cos 45^\circ = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ m \end{pmatrix}}{\left\| \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \right\| \left\| \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ m \end{pmatrix} \right\|} \quad (4.5.2.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow 3m^2 - 8m - 3 = 0 \quad (4.5.2.2)$$

$$\text{or, } m = -\frac{1}{3}, 3 \quad (4.5.2.3)$$

Thus, the desired equations are

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \left\{ \mathbf{x} - \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \right\} = 0 \quad (4.5.2.4)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = 7 \quad (4.5.2.5)$$

and

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \left\{ \mathbf{x} - \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \right\} = 0 \quad (4.5.2.6)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = 9 \quad (4.5.2.7)$$

See Fig. 4.5.2.1.

4.5.3 Find the equations of the two lines through the origin which intersect the line  $\frac{x-3}{2} = \frac{y-3}{1} = \frac{z}{1}$  at angles of  $\frac{\pi}{3}$

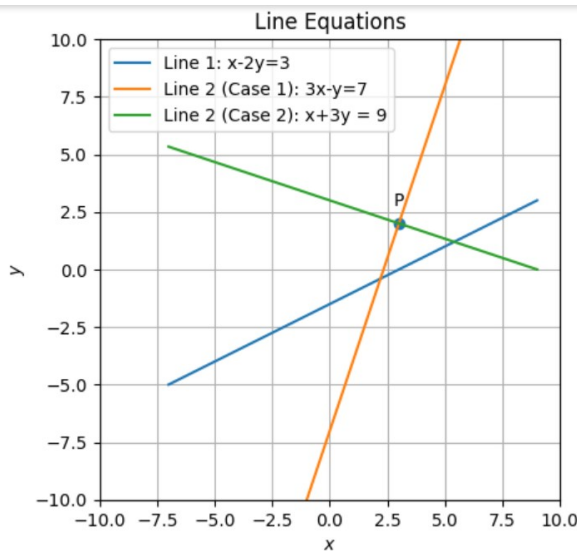


Fig. 4.5.2.1

each.

4.5.4 The equations of the lines which pass through the point (3, -2) and are inclined at  $60^\circ$  to the line  $\sqrt{3}x + y = 1$  is

- $y + 2 = 0$ ,  $\sqrt{3}x - y - 2 - 3\sqrt{3} = 0$
- $x - 2 = 0$ ,  $\sqrt{3}x - y + 2 + 3\sqrt{3} = 0$
- $\sqrt{3}x - y - 2 - 3\sqrt{3} = 0$
- None of these

4.5.5 Equations of the lines through the point (3,2) and making an angle of  $40^\circ$  with the line  $x - 2y = 3$  are \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 4.6 Intersection

4.6.1 Find the equation of the plane through the intersection of the planes  $3x - y + 2z - 4 = 0$  and  $x + y + z - 2 = 0$  and the point  $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$ .

**Solution:** The parameters of the given planes are

$$\mathbf{n}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{n}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, c_1 = 4, c_2 = 2. \quad (4.6.1.1)$$

The intersection of the planes is given as

$$\mathbf{n}_1^T \mathbf{x} - c_1 + \lambda (\mathbf{n}_2^T \mathbf{x} - c_2) = 0 \quad (4.6.1.2)$$

where

$$\lambda = \frac{c_1 - \mathbf{n}_1^T \mathbf{P}}{\mathbf{n}_2^T \mathbf{P} - c_2} = -\frac{2}{3} \quad (4.6.1.3)$$

upon substituting

$$\mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (4.6.1.4)$$

in (4.6.1.3) along with the numerical values in (4.6.1.1). Now, substituting (4.6.1.3) in (4.6.1.2), the equation of

plane is

$$\begin{pmatrix} 7 & -5 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = 8 \quad (4.6.1.5)$$

4.6.2 Find the area of triangle formed by the lines  $y - x = 0$ ,  $x + y = 0$ , and  $x - k = 0$ .

**Solution:** The vertices of the triangle can be expressed using the equations

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{0} \quad (4.6.2.1)$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ k \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.6.2.2)$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} k \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.6.2.3)$$

from which

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} k \\ -k \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} k \\ k \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.6.2.4)$$

are trivially obtained. Thus,

$$ar(ABC) = \frac{1}{2} \|(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}) \times (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C})\| \quad (4.6.2.5)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \left\| \begin{pmatrix} -k \\ k \end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix} -k \\ -k \end{pmatrix} \right\| = k^2 \quad (4.6.2.6)$$

4.6.3 Find the equation of the line parallel to y-axis and drawn through the point of intersection of the lines  $x - 7y + 5 = 0$  and  $3x + y = 0$ .

**Solution:** Following the approach in Problem 4.6.1, the desired equation is

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -7 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} - 5 + k \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = 0 \quad (4.6.3.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 + 3k & -7 + k \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = 5 \quad (4.6.3.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 + 3k \\ -7 + k \end{pmatrix} = \alpha \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \text{ or, } k = 7, \alpha = 22. \quad (4.6.3.3)$$

The desired equation is then given by

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = \frac{5}{22} \quad (4.6.3.4)$$

See Fig. 4.6.3.1.

4.6.4 A person standing at the junction (crossing) of two straight paths represented by the equations

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = -4 \quad (4.6.4.1)$$

and

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = 5 \quad (4.6.4.2)$$

wants to reach the path whose equation is

$$\begin{pmatrix} 6 & -7 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = -8 \quad (4.6.4.3)$$

Find equation of the path that he should follow.

**Solution:** The junction of (4.6.4.1) and (4.6.4.2) is obtained as

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -3 & -4 \\ 3 & 4 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_2 \rightarrow 2R_2 - 3R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -3 & -4 \\ 0 & 17 & 22 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_1 \rightarrow 17R_1 + 3R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 17 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 17 & 22 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow \mathbf{A} = \frac{1}{17} \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -1 \\ 22 \end{pmatrix}$$

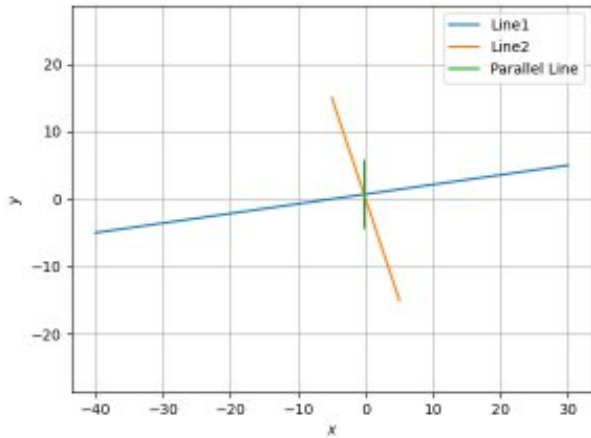


Fig. 4.6.3.1

Clearly, the man should follow the path perpendicular to (4.6.4.3) from **A** to reach it in the shortest time. The normal vector of (4.6.4.3) is

$$\begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ -7 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.6.4.4)$$

and the equation of the desired line is

$$(7 \ 6)\mathbf{x} = \frac{1}{17}(7 \ 6)\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 22 \end{pmatrix} = \frac{125}{17} \quad (4.6.4.5)$$

See Fig. 4.6.4.1.

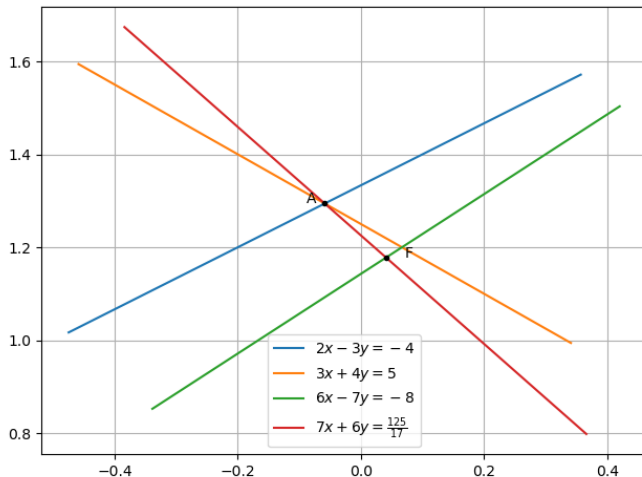


Fig. 4.6.4.1: AF is the required line.

4.6.5 Find the equation of the line passing through the point of intersection of the lines  $4x + 7y - 3 = 0$  and  $2x - 3y + 1 = 0$  that has equal intercepts on the axes.

**Solution:** From Problem 4.6.1, the intersection of the

lines is given by

$$(4 + 2k \ 7 - 3k)\mathbf{x} = 3 - k \quad (4.6.5.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 4 + 2k \\ 7 - 3k \end{pmatrix} = \alpha \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.6.5.2)$$

from Problem 4.1.16, yielding,

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 \\ 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_2 = R_2 - R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 \\ 0 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.6.5.3)$$

$$\text{or, } k = \frac{3}{5} \quad (4.6.5.4)$$

Substituting the above in (4.6.5.1), the desired equation is

$$(1 \ 1)\mathbf{x} = \frac{6}{13} \quad (4.6.5.5)$$

See Fig. 4.6.5.1.

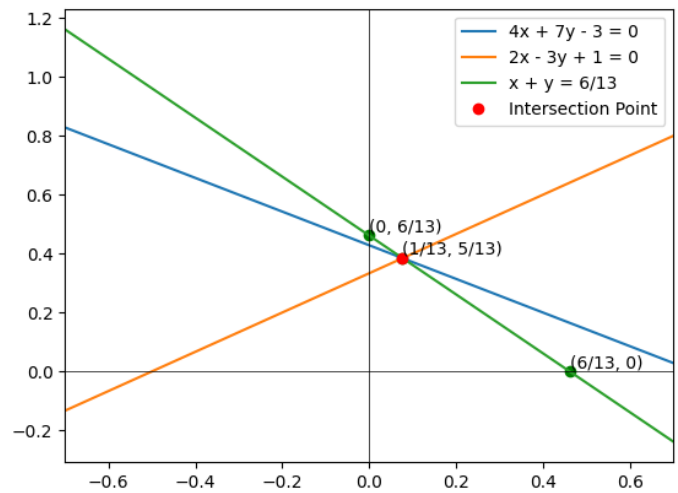


Fig. 4.6.5.1

4.6.6 Find the value of  $p$  so that the three lines  $3x + y - 2 = 0$ ,  $px + 2y - 3 = 0$  and  $2x - y - 3 = 0$  may intersect at one point.

**Solution:** Performing row operations on the matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 & -2 \\ p & 2 & -3 \\ 2 & -1 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{\substack{R_2 = 3R_2 - pR_1 \\ R_3 = 3R_3 - 2R_1}} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 & -2 \\ 0 & 6 - p & -9 + 2p \\ 0 & -5 & -5 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_3 = R_3(6 - p) + 5R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 & -2 \\ 0 & 6 - p & -9 + 2p \\ 0 & 0 & -75 + 15p \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow p = 5$$

See Fig. 4.6.6.1.

4.6.7 Show the lines

$$\frac{x-1}{2} = \frac{y-2}{3} = \frac{z-3}{4}$$

$$\text{and } \frac{x-4}{5} = \frac{y-1}{2} = z \text{ intersect.}$$

Also, find their point of intersection.

4.6.8 The area of the region bounded by the curve  $y = x + 1$  and the lines  $x = 2$  and  $x = 3$  is

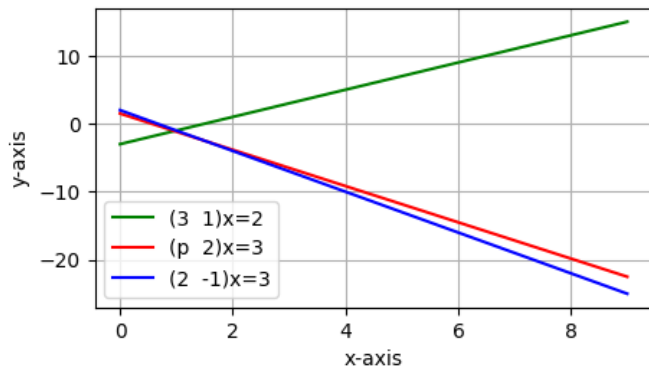


Fig. 4.6.6.1

- a)  $\frac{7}{2}$  sq units  
 b)  $\frac{9}{2}$  sq units  
 c)  $\frac{11}{2}$  sq units  
 d)  $\frac{13}{2}$  sq units

- 4.6.9 The area of the region bounded by the curve  $x = 2 + 3$  and the  $y$  lines  $y = 1$  and  $y = -1$  is  
 a) 4 sq units  
 b)  $\frac{3}{2}$  sq units  
 c) 6 sq units  
 d) 8 sq units
- 4.6.10 Compute the area bounded by the line  $x + 2y = 2$ ,  $y - x = 1$  and  $2x + y = 7$ .
- 4.6.11 Find the area bounded by the lines  $y = 4x + 5$ ,  $y = 5 - x$  and  $4y = x + 5$ .
- 4.6.12 Find the equation of the plane which is perpendicular to the plane  $5x + 3y + 6z + 8 = 0$  and which contains the line of intersection of the planes  $x + 2y + 3z - 4 = 0$  and  $2x + y - z + 5 = 0$ .
- 4.6.13 Point  $P(0, 2)$  is the point of intersection of  $y$ -axis and perpendicular bisector of line segment joining the points  $A(-1, 1)$  and  $B(3, 3)$ .
- 4.6.14 Prove that the line through  $A(0, -1, -1)$  and  $B(4, 5, 1)$  intersects the line through  $C(3, 9, 4)$  and  $D(-4, 4, 4)$ .
- 4.6.15 Find the equation of the plane through the intersection of the planes  $\vec{r} \cdot (\hat{i} + 3\hat{j}) - 6 = 0$  and  $\vec{r} \cdot (3\hat{i} - \hat{j} - 4\hat{k}) = 0$ , whose perpendicular distance from origin is unity.
- 4.6.16 Find the equation of the line passing through the point of intersection of  $2x + y = 5$  and  $x + 3y + 8 = 0$  and parallel the line  $3x + 4y = 7$ .
- 4.6.17 Find the equations of the lines through the point of intersection of the line  $x - y + 1 = 0$  and  $2x - 3y + 5 = 0$  and whose distance from the point  $(3, 2)$  is  $\frac{7}{5}$ .
- 4.6.18 Equations of diagonals of the square formed by the lines  $x = 0$ ,  $y = 0$ ,  $x = 1$  and  $y = 1$  are  
 a)  $y = x$ ,  $y + x = 1$   
 b)  $y = x$ ,  $x + y = 2$   
 c)  $2y = x$ ,  $y + x = \frac{1}{3}$   
 d)  $y = 2x$ ,  $y + 2x = 1$
- 4.6.19 The straight line  $5x + 4y = 0$  passes through the point of intersection of the straight lines  $x + 2y - 10 = 0$  and  $2x + y + 5 = 0$ .

4.6.20 The lines  $ax + 2y + 1 = 0$ ,  $bx = 3y + 1 = 0$  and  $cx + 4y + 1 = 0$  are concurrent if  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$  are in G.P.

#### 4.7 Miscellaneous

4.7.1 Find the values of  $k$  for which the line

$$(k - 3)x - (4 - k^2)y + k^2 - 7k + 6 = 0 \quad (4.7.1.1)$$

is

- a) Parallel to the  $x$ -axis  
 b) Parallel to the  $y$ -axis  
 c) Passing through the origin

**Solution:**

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} k - 3 \\ -4 + k^2 \end{pmatrix}, c = -k^2 + 7k - 6 \quad (4.7.1.2)$$

a)

$$\begin{pmatrix} k - 3 \\ -4 + k^2 \end{pmatrix} = \alpha \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow k = 3, \quad (4.7.1.3)$$

$$\Rightarrow (0 \ 5)\mathbf{x} = 6 \quad (4.7.1.4)$$

upon substituting from (4.7.1.2).

b) In this case,

$$\begin{pmatrix} k - 3 \\ -4 + k^2 \end{pmatrix} = \beta \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow k = \pm 2 \quad (4.7.1.5)$$

$$\Rightarrow (-1 \ 0)\mathbf{x} = 4, \quad k = 2 \quad (4.7.1.6)$$

$$(-5 \ 0)\mathbf{x} = -24, \quad k = -2 \quad (4.7.1.7)$$

c) In this case,

$$-k^2 + 7k - 6 = 0 \Rightarrow k = 1, k = 6 \quad (4.7.1.8)$$

$$\Rightarrow (-2 \ -3)\mathbf{x} = 0, \quad k = 1 \quad (4.7.1.9)$$

$$(3 \ 32)\mathbf{x} = 0, \quad k = 6 \quad (4.7.1.10)$$

4.7.2 Find the equations of the lines, which cutoff intercepts on the axes whose sum and product are 1 and -6 respectively.

**Solution:** Let the intercepts be  $a$  and  $b$ . Then

$$a + b = 1, ab = -6 \quad (4.7.2.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow a = 3, b = -2 \quad (4.7.2.2)$$

Thus, the possible intercepts are

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.7.2.3)$$

From (1.5.5),

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.7.2.4)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{3} \\ \frac{1}{-2} \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.7.2.5)$$

$$\text{or, } (2 \ -3)\mathbf{x} = 6 \quad (4.7.2.6)$$

using (1.6.1). Similarly, the other line can be obtained as

$$(3 \ -2)\mathbf{x} = -6 \quad (4.7.2.7)$$

See Fig. 4.7.2.1.

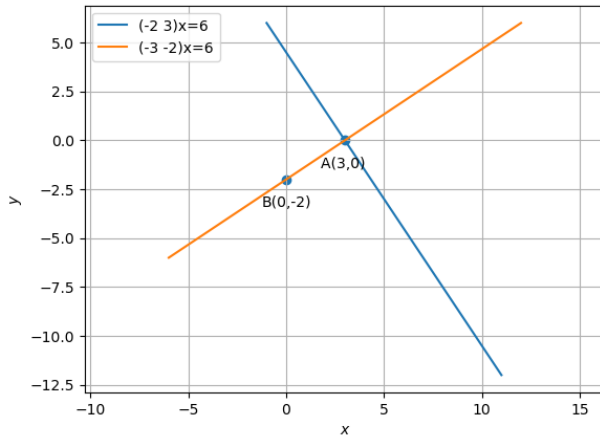


Fig. 4.7.2.1

- 4.7.3 A ray of light passing through the point  $P = (1, 2)$  reflects on the x-axis at point  $A$  and the reflected ray passes through the point  $Q = (5, 3)$ . Find the coordinates of  $A$ .  
**Solution:** From (4.8.1.1), the reflection of  $Q$  is

$$R = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.7.3.1)$$

Letting

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (4.7.3.2)$$

since  $P, A, R$  are collinear, from (1.5.6),

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 5 & -3 \\ 1 & x & 0 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow[R_3=R_3-R_1]{R_2=R_2-R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 4 & -5 \\ 0 & x-1 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.7.3.3)$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_3=4R_3-(x-1)R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 4 & -5 \\ 0 & 0 & 5x-13 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow x = \frac{13}{5} \quad (4.7.3.4)$$

See Fig. 4.7.3.1.

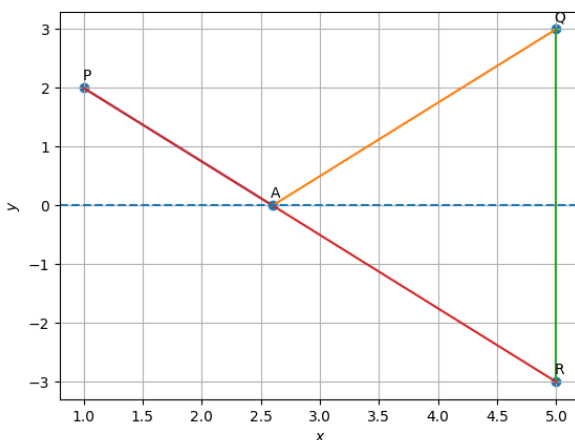


Fig. 4.7.3.1

- 4.7.4 Prove that in any  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $\cos A = \frac{b^2+c^2-a^2}{2bc}$ , where  $a, b, c$  are the magnitudes of the sides opposite to the vertices  $A, B, C$  respectively.
- 4.7.5 Distance of the point  $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$  from y-axis is
- $\beta$
  - $|\beta|$
  - $|\beta + \gamma|$
  - $\sqrt{\alpha^2 + \gamma^2}$
- 4.7.6 The reflection of the point  $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$  in the xy-plane is
- $\alpha, \beta, 0$
  - $(0, 0, \gamma)$
  - $(-\alpha, -\beta, \gamma)$
  - $(\alpha, \beta, -\gamma)$
- 4.7.7 The plane  $ax + by = 0$  is rotated about its line of intersection with the plane  $z = 0$  through an angle  $\alpha$ . Prove that the equation of the plane in its new position is

$$ax + by \pm (\sqrt{a^2 + b^2} \tan \alpha)z = 0.$$

- 4.7.8 The locus represented by  $xy + yz = 0$  is
- A pair of perpendicular lines
  - A pair of parallel lines
  - A pair of parallel planes
  - A pair of perpendicular planes
- 4.7.9 For what values of  $a$  and  $b$  the intercepts cut off on the coordinate axes by the line  $ax + by + 8 = 0$  are equal in length but opposite in signs to those cut off by the line  $2x - 3y = 0$  on the axes.
- 4.7.10 If the equation of the base of an equilateral triangle is  $x + y = 2$  and the vertex is  $(2, -1)$ , then find the length of the side of the triangle.
- 4.7.11 A variable line passes through a fixed point  $P$ . The algebraic sum of the perpendiculars drawn from the points  $(2, 0)$ ,  $(0, 2)$  and  $(1, 1)$  on the line is zero. Find the coordinates of the point  $P$ .
- 4.7.12 A straight line moves so that the sum of the reciprocals of its intercepts made on axes is constant. Show that the line passes through a fixed point.
- 4.7.13 If the sum of the distances of a moving point in a plane from the axes is  $l$ , then find the locus of the point.
- 4.7.14  $P_1, P_2$  are points on either of the two lines  $y - \sqrt{3}|x| = 2$  at a distance of 5 units from their point of intersection. Find the coordinates of the root of perpendiculars drawn from  $P_1, P_2$  on the bisector of the angle between the given lines.
- 4.7.15 If  $p$  is the length of perpendicular from the origin on the line  $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$  and  $a^2, p^2, b^2$  are in A.P., then show that  $a^4 + b^4 = 0$ .
- 4.7.16 The point  $(4, 1)$  undergoes the following two successive transformations :
- Reflection about the line  $y = x$
  - Translation through a distance 2 units along the positive x-axis
- Then the final coordinates of the point are
- $(4, 3)$
  - $(3, 4)$

- c) (1,4)  
d)  $\frac{7}{2}, \frac{7}{2}$

4.7.17 One vertex of the equilateral with centroid at the origin and one side as  $x + y - 2 = 0$  is

- a) (-1,-1)  
b) (2,2)  
c) (-2,-2)  
d) (2,-2)

4.7.18 If  $a, b, c$  are in A.P., then the straight lines  $ax + by + c = 0$  will always pass through \_\_\_\_\_.

4.7.19 The points (3,4) and (2,-6) are situated on the \_\_\_\_\_ of the line  $3x - 4y - 8 = 0$ .

4.7.20 A point moves so that square of its distance from the point (3,-2) is numerically equal to its distance from the line  $5x - 12y = 3$ . The equation of its locus is

4.7.21 Locus of the mid-points of the portion of the line  $x \sin \theta + y \cos \theta = p$  intercepted between the axes is \_\_\_\_\_.  
State whether the following statements are true or false. Justify.

4.7.22 If the vertices of a triangle have integral coordinates, then the triangle can not be equilateral.

4.7.23 The line  $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$  moves in such a way that  $\frac{1}{a^2} + \frac{1}{b^2} = \frac{1}{c^2}$ , where  $c$  is a constant. The locus of the foot of the perpendicular from the origin on the given line is  $x^2 + y^2 = c^2$ .

4.7.24 Match the following

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. The coordinates of the points P and Q on the line $x + 5y = 13$ which are at a distance of 2 units from the line $12x - 5y + 26 = 0$ are | a) (3,1), (-7,11)  |
| 2. The coordinates of the point on the line $x + y = 4$ , which are at a unit distance from the line $4x + 3y - 10 = 0$ are                 | b) $-\frac{1}{11}, \frac{11}{3}, \frac{4}{3}, \frac{7}{3}$ |
| 3. The coordinates of the point on the line joining A (-2, 5) and B (3, 1) such that AP = PQ = QB are                                       | c) $1, \frac{12}{5}, -3, \frac{16}{5}$                     |

TABLE 4.7.24

4.7.25 The value of the  $\lambda$ , if the lines  $(2x + 3y + 4) + \lambda(6x - y + 12) = 0$  are

- |   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1. parallel to y-axis is                | a) $\lambda = -\frac{3}{2}$   |
| 2. perpendicular to $7x + y - 4 = 0$ is | b) $\lambda = -\frac{1}{4}$   |
| 3. passes through (1,2) is              | c) $\lambda = -\frac{17}{11}$ |
| 4. parallel to x axis is                | d) $\lambda = 3$              |

TABLE 4.7.25

4.7.26 The equation of the line through the intersection of the lines  $2x - 3y = 0$  and  $4x - 5y = 2$  and

- |  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| 1. through the point (2,1) is                | a) $2x - y = 4$      |
| 2. perpendicular to the line                 | b) $x + y - 5 = 0$   |
| 3. parallel to the line $3x - 4y + 5 = 0$ is | c) $x - y - 1 = 0$   |
| 4. equally inclined to the axes is           | d) $3x - 4y - 1 = 0$ |

TABLE 4.7.26

#### 4.8 Formulae

4.8.1. The reflection of point **Q** w.r.t a line is given by

$$\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{Q} - \frac{2(\mathbf{n}^T \mathbf{Q} - c)}{\|\mathbf{n}\|^2} \mathbf{n} \quad (4.8.1.1)$$

## 5 SKEW LINES

### 5.1 Least Squares

5.1.1 Find the shortest distance between the lines

$$\frac{x+1}{7} = \frac{y+1}{-6} = \frac{z+1}{1} \quad \text{and} \quad (5.1.1.1)$$

$$\frac{x-3}{1} = \frac{y-5}{-2} = \frac{z-7}{1} \quad (5.1.1.2)$$

**Solution:** The given lines can be written as

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + \kappa_1 \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ -6 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.1.1.3)$$

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix} + \kappa_2 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

with

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{M} = \begin{pmatrix} 7 & 1 \\ -6 & -2 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.1.1.4)$$

Substituting the above in (5.2.1.4),

$$\left( \begin{array}{cc|c} 7 & 1 & 4 \\ -6 & -2 & 6 \\ 1 & 1 & 8 \end{array} \right) \begin{array}{l} R_2 \leftarrow R_2 + \frac{6}{7} R_1 \\ R_3 \leftarrow R_3 - \frac{1}{7} R_1 \end{array} \quad (5.1.1.5)$$

$$\left( \begin{array}{cc|c} 7 & 1 & 4 \\ 0 & -\frac{8}{7} & \frac{66}{7} \\ 0 & \frac{6}{7} & -\frac{52}{7} \end{array} \right) \begin{array}{l} R_3 \leftarrow R_3 + \frac{3}{4} R_2 \end{array} \quad (5.1.1.6)$$

$$\left( \begin{array}{cc|c} 2 & 3 & 1 \\ 0 & -\frac{7}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 & 0 & -\frac{5}{14} \end{array} \right) \quad (5.1.1.7)$$

The rank of the matrix is 3. So the given lines are skew. From (5.2.2.7)

$$\begin{pmatrix} 7 & -6 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ -6 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \kappa = \begin{pmatrix} 7 & -6 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 6 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.1.1.8)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 86 & 20 \\ 20 & 6 \end{pmatrix} \kappa = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.1.1.9)$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} \kappa_1 \\ -\kappa_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.1.1.10)$$

From (5.1.1.3), the closest points are **A** and **B** and the minimum distance between the lines is given by

$$\|\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}\| = \left\| \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 6 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \right\| = 2\sqrt{29} \quad (5.1.1.11)$$

See Fig. 5.1.1.1.

5.1.2 Find the shortest distance between the lines whose vector

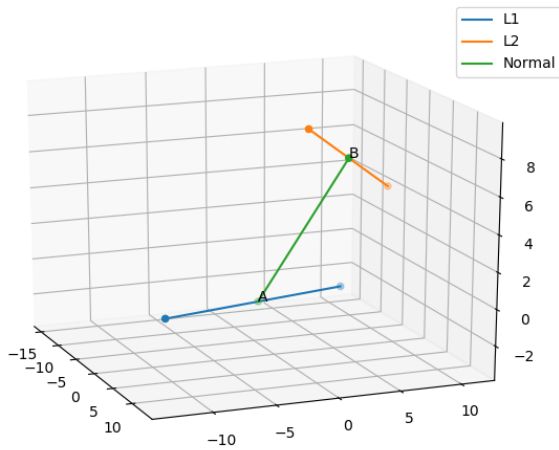


Fig. 5.1.1.1

equations are

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} + \kappa_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.1.2.1)$$

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} + \kappa_2 \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Solution:** In this case,

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 3 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.1.2.2)$$

$$\mathbf{M} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -3 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (5.1.2.3)$$

forming the matrix in (5.2.1.4),

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ -3 & 3 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_2 \leftarrow R_2 + 3R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 9 & 12 \\ 2 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_3 \leftarrow R_3 - 2R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 9 & 12 \\ 0 & -3 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_3 \leftarrow -3R_3 + R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 9 & 12 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

Clearly, the rank of this matrix is 3, and therefore, the lines are skew. From (5.2.2.7),

$$\begin{pmatrix} 14 & -5 & 0 \\ -5 & 14 & 18 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_1 \leftarrow R_1 + R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 9 & 9 & 18 \\ -5 & 14 & 18 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_1 \leftarrow \frac{R_1}{9}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 \\ -5 & 14 & 18 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_2 \leftarrow R_2 + 5R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 19 & 28 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_1 \leftarrow \frac{R_1}{19}} \begin{pmatrix} 19 & 0 & 10 \\ 0 & 19 & 28 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_2 \leftarrow \frac{R_2}{19}} \begin{pmatrix} 19 & 0 & 10 \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{28}{19} \end{pmatrix}$$

yielding

$$\kappa = \frac{1}{19} \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 28 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.1.2.4)$$

Substituting the above in (5.1.2.1),

$$\mathbf{x}_1 = \frac{1}{19} \begin{pmatrix} 29 \\ 8 \\ 77 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{x}_2 = \frac{1}{19} \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 11 \\ 86 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (5.1.2.5)$$

Thus, the required distance is

$$\|\mathbf{x}_2 - \mathbf{x}_1\| = \frac{3}{\sqrt{19}} \quad (5.1.2.6)$$

See Fig. 5.1.2.1.

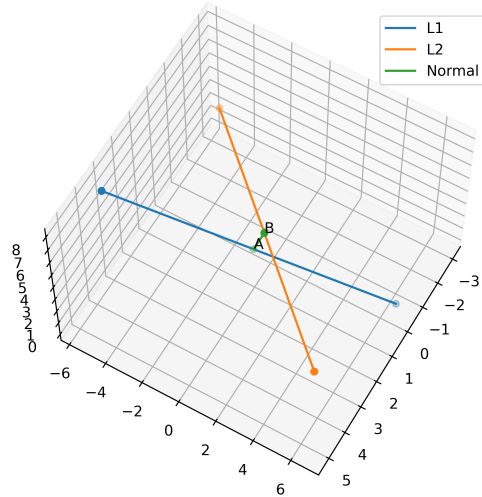


Fig. 5.1.2.1

5.1.3 Find the shortest distance between the lines  $l_1$  and  $l_2$  whose vector equations are

$$\vec{r} = \hat{i} + \hat{j} + \kappa(2\hat{i} - \hat{j} + \hat{k}) \quad \text{and} \quad (5.1.3.1)$$

$$\vec{r} = 2\hat{i} + \hat{j} - \hat{k} + \mu(3\hat{i} - 5\hat{j} + 2\hat{k}). \quad (5.1.3.2)$$

**Solution:** The given lines can be written in vector form as

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \kappa_1 \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (5.1.3.3)$$

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + \kappa_2 \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -5 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{M} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ -1 & -5 \\ 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.1.3.4)$$

Substituting the above in (5.2.1.4),

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 & 1 \\ -1 & -5 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_2 \leftarrow R_2 + \frac{1}{2}R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 & 1 \\ 0 & -\frac{7}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 & \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{3}{2} \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.1.3.5)$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_3 \leftarrow R_3 + 7R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 & 1 \\ 0 & -\frac{7}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 & 0 & -10 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.1.3.6)$$

The rank of the matrix is 3. So the given lines are skew.

From (5.2.2.7),

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 & 1 \\ 3 & -5 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \kappa = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 & 1 \\ 3 & -5 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.1.3.7) \quad 5.2.1. \text{ The lines}$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 13 \\ 13 & 38 \end{pmatrix} \kappa = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.1.3.8)$$

The augmented matrix of the above equation (5.1.3.8) is given by,

$$\left( \begin{array}{cc|c} 6 & 13 & 1 \\ 13 & 38 & 1 \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow{R_2 \leftarrow R_2 - \frac{13}{6}R_1} \left( \begin{array}{cc|c} 6 & 13 & 1 \\ 0 & \frac{59}{6} & -\frac{7}{6} \end{array} \right) \quad (5.1.3.9)$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_1 \leftarrow R_1 - \frac{78}{59}R_2} \left( \begin{array}{cc|c} 6 & 0 & \frac{150}{59} \\ 0 & \frac{59}{6} & -\frac{7}{6} \end{array} \right) \quad (5.1.3.10)$$

yielding

$$\begin{pmatrix} \kappa_1 \\ -\kappa_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{25}{59} \\ -\frac{7}{59} \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.1.3.11) \quad 5.2.2. \text{ If } L_1, L_2, \text{ do not intersect, let}$$

Substituting in (5.1.3.3),

$$\mathbf{x}_1 = \frac{1}{59} \begin{pmatrix} 109 \\ 34 \\ 25 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{x}_2 = \frac{1}{59} \begin{pmatrix} 139 \\ 24 \\ -45 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (5.1.3.12)$$

The minimum distance between the lines is given by,

$$\|\mathbf{x}_2 - \mathbf{x}_1\| = \left\| \frac{1}{59} \begin{pmatrix} 30 \\ -10 \\ -70 \end{pmatrix} \right\| = \frac{10}{\sqrt{59}} \quad (5.1.3.13)$$

See Fig. 5.1.3.1.

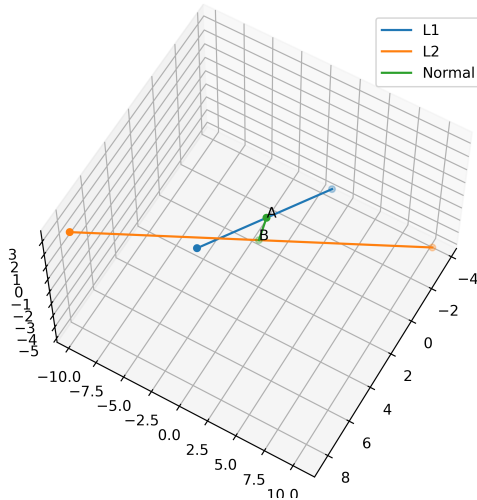


Fig. 5.1.3.1

5.1.4 Find the shortest distance between the lines given by

$$\vec{r} = (8 + 3\kappa\hat{i} - (9 + 16\kappa)\hat{j} + (10 + 7\kappa)\hat{k}) \quad (5.1.4.1)$$

$$\vec{r} = 15\hat{i} + 29\hat{j} + 5\hat{k} + \mu(3\hat{i} + 8\hat{j} - 5\hat{k}). \quad (5.1.4.2)$$

5.1.5 Find the shortest distance between the lines

$$\vec{r} = (\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + \hat{k}) + \kappa(\hat{i} - \hat{j} + \hat{k}) \quad (5.1.5.1)$$

$$\vec{r} = 2\hat{i} - \hat{j} - \hat{k} + \mu(2\hat{i} + \hat{j} + 2\hat{k}) \quad (5.1.5.2)$$

## 5.2 Formulae

$$L_1 : \quad \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{A} + \kappa_1 \mathbf{m}_1 \quad (5.2.1.1)$$

$$L_2 : \quad \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{B} + \kappa_2 \mathbf{m}_2 \quad (5.2.1.2)$$

will intersect if

$$\mathbf{A} + \kappa_1 \mathbf{m}_1 = \mathbf{B} + \kappa_2 \mathbf{m}_2 \quad (5.2.1.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow (\mathbf{m}_1 \quad \mathbf{m}_2) \begin{pmatrix} \kappa_1 \\ -\kappa_2 \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} \quad (5.2.1.3)$$

$$\Rightarrow \text{rank}(\mathbf{M} \quad \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}) = 2 \quad (5.2.1.4)$$

where

$$\mathbf{M} = (\mathbf{m}_1 \quad \mathbf{m}_2) \quad (5.2.1.5)$$

$$\mathbf{x}_1 = \mathbf{A} + \kappa_1 \mathbf{m}_1 \quad (5.2.2.1)$$

$$\mathbf{x}_2 = \mathbf{B} + \kappa_2 \mathbf{m}_2 \quad (5.2.2.1)$$

be points on  $L_1, L_2$  respectively, that are closest to each other. Then, from (5.2.2.1)

$$\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2 = \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} + (\mathbf{m}_1 \quad \mathbf{m}_2) \begin{pmatrix} \kappa_1 \\ -\kappa_2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.2.2.2)$$

Also,

$$(\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2)^\top \mathbf{m}_1 = (\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2)^\top \mathbf{m}_2 = 0 \quad (5.2.2.3)$$

$$\Rightarrow (\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2)^\top (\mathbf{m}_1 \quad \mathbf{m}_2) = \mathbf{0} \quad (5.2.2.4)$$

$$\text{or, } \mathbf{M}^\top (\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2) = \mathbf{0} \quad (5.2.2.5)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{M}^\top (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}) + \mathbf{M}^\top \mathbf{M} \begin{pmatrix} \kappa_1 \\ -\kappa_2 \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{0} \quad (5.2.2.6)$$

from (5.2.2.2), yielding

$$\mathbf{M}^\top \mathbf{M} \begin{pmatrix} \kappa_1 \\ -\kappa_2 \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{M}^\top (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}) \quad (5.2.2.7)$$

This is known as the *least squares solution*.

## 5.3 Singular Value Decomposition

5.3.1 Find the shortest distance between the lines whose vector equations are

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.3.1.1)$$

and

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda_2 \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.3.1.2)$$



**Solution:** From (5.1.2.3),

$$\mathbf{M}^T \mathbf{M} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -3 & 2 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -3 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 14 & -5 \\ -5 & 14 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.3.1.3)$$

$$\mathbf{M} \mathbf{M}^T = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -3 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -3 & 2 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 18 & -3 \\ 4 & -3 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.3.1.4)$$

a) For  $\mathbf{M} \mathbf{M}^T$ , the characteristic polynomial is

$$\text{char} \mathbf{M} \mathbf{M}^T = \begin{vmatrix} \lambda - 5 & -3 & -4 \\ -3 & \lambda - 18 & 3 \\ -4 & 3 & \lambda - 5 \end{vmatrix} \quad (5.3.1.5)$$

$$= \lambda(\lambda - 9)(\lambda - 19) \quad (5.3.1.6)$$

Thus, the eigenvalues are given by

$$\lambda_1 = 19, \lambda_2 = 9, \lambda_3 = 0 \quad (5.3.1.7)$$

For  $\lambda_1$ , the augmented matrix formed from the eigenvalue-eigenvector equation is

$$\begin{pmatrix} -14 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & -1 & -3 \\ 4 & -3 & -14 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_1 \leftarrow \frac{R_1 + R_3}{-10}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 3 & -1 & -3 \\ 4 & -3 & -14 \end{pmatrix} \\ \xrightarrow{R_3 \leftarrow R_3 - 4R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & -6 \\ 0 & -3 & -18 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_3 \leftarrow R_3 - 3R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & -6 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ \xrightarrow{R_2 \leftarrow -R_2 + 3R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & -6 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Hence, the normalized eigenvector is

$$\mathbf{u}_1 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{38}} \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -6 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.3.1.8)$$

For  $\lambda_2$ , the augmented matrix formed from the eigenvalue-eigenvector equation is

$$\begin{pmatrix} -4 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 9 & -3 \\ 4 & 3 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_3 \leftarrow R_1 + R_3} \begin{pmatrix} -4 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 9 & -3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ \xrightarrow{R_1 \leftarrow \frac{R_1 - 3R_2}{-4}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ \xrightarrow{R_2 \leftarrow \frac{4R_2 + 3R_1}{45}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Hence, the normalized eigenvector is

$$\mathbf{u}_2 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.3.1.9)$$

For  $\lambda_3$ , the augmented matrix formed from the eigenvalue-eigenvector equation is

$$\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 18 & -3 \\ 4 & -3 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_1 \leftarrow \frac{R_1 + R_3}{9}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 3 & 18 & -3 \\ 4 & -3 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ \xrightarrow{R_3 \leftarrow R_3 - 4R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 18 & -6 \\ 0 & -3 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_3 \leftarrow R_3 + R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 3 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ \xrightarrow{R_2 \leftarrow \frac{R_2}{6}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 3 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

yielding

$$\mathbf{u}_3 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{19}} \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.3.1.10)$$

Using (5.4.1.1), we see that

$$\mathbf{U} = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{\sqrt{38}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & -\frac{3}{\sqrt{19}} \\ -\frac{6}{\sqrt{38}} & 0 & \frac{1}{\sqrt{19}} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{38}} & -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & \frac{3}{\sqrt{19}} \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.3.1.11)$$

$$\mathbf{D}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 19 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 9 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.3.1.12)$$

b) For  $\mathbf{M}^T \mathbf{M}$ , the characteristic polynomial is

$$\text{char} \mathbf{M}^T \mathbf{M} = \begin{vmatrix} \lambda - 14 & 5 \\ 5 & \lambda - 14 \end{vmatrix} \quad (5.3.1.13)$$

$$= (\lambda - 9)(\lambda - 19) \quad (5.3.1.14)$$

Thus, the eigenvalues are given by

$$\lambda_1 = 19, \lambda_2 = 9 \quad (5.3.1.15)$$

For  $\lambda_1$ , the augmented matrix formed from the eigenvalue-eigenvector equation is

$$\begin{pmatrix} -5 & -5 \\ -5 & -5 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_1 \leftarrow R_1 - R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ -5 & -5 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.3.1.16)$$

Hence, the normalized eigenvector is

$$\mathbf{v}_1 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.3.1.17)$$

For  $\lambda_2$ , the augmented matrix formed from the eigenvalue-eigenvector equation is

$$\begin{pmatrix} 5 & -5 \\ -5 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_1 \leftarrow R_1 + R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 5 & -5 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.3.1.18)$$

Hence, the normalized eigenvector is

$$\mathbf{v}_2 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.3.1.19)$$

Thus, from (5.4.1.2),

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{D}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 9 & 0 \\ 0 & 19 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.3.1.20)$$

Using (5.3.1.15),

$$\mathbf{\Sigma} \triangleq \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{\lambda_1} & 0 \\ 0 & \sqrt{\lambda_2} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{19} & 0 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.3.1.21)$$

and substituting into (5.4.2.6),

$$\kappa = \frac{1}{19} \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 28 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.3.1.22)$$

which agrees with (5.1.2.4).

5.3.2 Find the shortest distance between the lines  $l_1$  and  $l_2$

whose vector equations are

$$\vec{r} = \hat{i} + \hat{j} + \lambda(2\hat{i} - \hat{j} + \hat{k}) \text{ and} \quad (5.3.2.1)$$

$$\vec{r} = 2\hat{i} + \hat{j} - \hat{k} + \mu(3\hat{i} - 5\hat{j} + 2\hat{k}). \quad (5.3.2.2)$$

**Solution:**

- a) To check whether the given lines are skew, from (5.1.3.4) and (5.2.1.4),

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 & 1 \\ -1 & -5 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow[R_3 \leftarrow R_3 - \frac{1}{2}R_1]{R_2 \leftarrow R_2 + \frac{1}{2}R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 & 1 \\ 0 & -\frac{7}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 & \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{3}{2} \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_3 \leftarrow R_3 + 7R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 & 1 \\ 0 & -\frac{7}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 & 0 & -10 \end{pmatrix}$$

The rank of the matrix is 3. So the given lines are skew.

b)

$$\mathbf{M}^T \mathbf{M} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 & 1 \\ 3 & -5 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ -1 & -5 \\ 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.3.2.3)$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 13 \\ 13 & 38 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.3.2.4)$$

$$\mathbf{M} \mathbf{M}^T = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ -1 & -5 \\ 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 & 1 \\ 3 & -5 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.3.2.5)$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 13 & -17 & 8 \\ -17 & 26 & -11 \\ 8 & -11 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.3.2.6)$$

The characteristic polynomial of the matrix  $\mathbf{M} \mathbf{M}^T$  is given by,

$$\text{char}(\mathbf{M} \mathbf{M}^T) = \begin{vmatrix} 13 - \lambda & -17 & 8 \\ -17 & 26 - \lambda & -11 \\ 8 & -11 & 5 - \lambda \end{vmatrix} \quad (5.3.2.7)$$

$$= -\lambda^3 + 44\lambda^2 - 59\lambda \quad (5.3.2.8)$$

resulting in

$$\mathbf{U} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{12 - \sqrt{17}}{\sqrt{5}\sqrt{68-6\sqrt{17}}} & \frac{12 + \sqrt{17}}{\sqrt{5}\sqrt{68+6\sqrt{17}}} & -\frac{3}{\sqrt{59}} \\ \frac{1-3\sqrt{17}}{\sqrt{5}\sqrt{68-6\sqrt{17}}} & \frac{1+3\sqrt{17}}{\sqrt{5}\sqrt{68+6\sqrt{17}}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{59}} \\ \frac{\sqrt{5}}{\sqrt{68-6\sqrt{17}}} & \frac{\sqrt{5}}{\sqrt{68+6\sqrt{17}}} & \frac{7}{\sqrt{59}} \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.3.2.9)$$

and

$$\mathbf{D}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 22 + 5\sqrt{17} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 22 - 5\sqrt{17} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.3.2.10)$$

For  $\mathbf{M}^T \mathbf{M}$ , the characteristic polynomial is

$$\text{char}(\mathbf{M}^T \mathbf{M}) = \begin{vmatrix} 6 - \lambda & 13 \\ 13 & 38 - \lambda \end{vmatrix} \quad (5.3.2.11)$$

$$= \lambda^2 - 44\lambda + 59 \quad (5.3.2.12)$$

Thus, the eigenvalues are given by

$$\lambda_1 = 22 + 5\sqrt{17}, \quad \lambda_2 = 22 - 5\sqrt{17} \quad (5.3.2.13)$$

resulting in

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{-16-5\sqrt{17}}{\sqrt{850+160\sqrt{17}}} & \frac{13}{\sqrt{850-160\sqrt{17}}} \\ \frac{13}{\sqrt{850+160\sqrt{17}}} & \frac{-16+5\sqrt{17}}{\sqrt{850-160\sqrt{17}}} \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.3.2.14)$$

$$\mathbf{D}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 22 - 5\sqrt{17} & 0 \\ 0 & 22 + 5\sqrt{17} \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.3.2.15)$$

Therefore,

$$\mathbf{\Sigma} = \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{22 + 5\sqrt{17}} & 0 \\ 0 & \sqrt{22 - 5\sqrt{17}} \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.3.2.16)$$

and substituting into (5.4.3.5),

$$\lambda = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{25}{59} \\ -\frac{7}{59} \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.3.2.17)$$

which agrees with (5.1.3.11).

5.3.3 Find the shortest distance between the lines given by

$$\vec{r} = (8 + 3\lambda\hat{i} - (9 + 16\lambda)\hat{j} + (10 + 7\lambda)\hat{k}) \text{ and} \quad (5.3.3.1)$$

$$\vec{r} = 15\hat{i} + 29\hat{j} + 5\hat{k} + \mu(3\hat{i} + 8\hat{j} - 5\hat{k}). \quad (5.3.3.2)$$

5.3.4 Find the shortest distance between the lines

$$\vec{r} = (\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + \hat{k}) + \lambda(\hat{i} - \hat{j} + \hat{k}) \text{ and} \quad (5.3.4.1)$$

$$\vec{r} = 2\hat{i} - \hat{j} - \hat{k} + \mu(2\hat{i} + \hat{j} + 2\hat{k}) \quad (5.3.4.2)$$

5.3.5 Find the shortest distance between the lines

$$\frac{x+1}{7} = \frac{y+1}{-6} = \frac{z+1}{1} \text{ and} \quad (5.3.5.1)$$

$$\frac{x-3}{1} = \frac{y-5}{-2} = \frac{z-7}{1} \quad (5.3.5.2)$$

## 5.4 Formulae

5.4.1. Perform the eigendecompositions

$$\mathbf{M} \mathbf{M}^T = \mathbf{U} \mathbf{D}_1 \mathbf{U}^T \quad (5.4.1.1)$$

$$\mathbf{M}^T \mathbf{M} = \mathbf{V} \mathbf{D}_2 \mathbf{V}^T \quad (5.4.1.2)$$

5.4.2. The following expression is known as *singular value decomposition*

$$\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{U} \mathbf{\Sigma} \mathbf{V}^T \quad (5.4.2.1)$$

where  $\mathbf{\Sigma}$  is diagonal with entries obtained as in (5.3.1.21).

Substituting in (5.2.2.7),

$$\mathbf{V} \mathbf{\Sigma} \mathbf{U}^T \mathbf{U} \mathbf{\Sigma} \mathbf{V}^T \boldsymbol{\kappa} = \mathbf{V} \mathbf{\Sigma} \mathbf{U}^T (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}) \quad (5.4.2.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{V} \mathbf{\Sigma}^2 \mathbf{V}^T \boldsymbol{\kappa} = \mathbf{V} \mathbf{\Sigma} \mathbf{U}^T (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}) \quad (5.4.2.3)$$

$$\Rightarrow \boldsymbol{\kappa} = (\mathbf{V} \mathbf{\Sigma}^2 \mathbf{V}^T)^{-1} \mathbf{V} \mathbf{\Sigma} \mathbf{U}^T (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}) \quad (5.4.2.4)$$

$$\Rightarrow \boldsymbol{\kappa} = \mathbf{V} \mathbf{\Sigma}^{-2} \mathbf{V}^T \mathbf{V} \mathbf{\Sigma} \mathbf{U}^T (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}) \quad (5.4.2.5)$$

$$\Rightarrow \boldsymbol{\kappa} = \mathbf{V} \mathbf{\Sigma}^{-1} \mathbf{U}^T (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}) \quad (5.4.2.6)$$

where  $\mathbf{\Sigma}^{-1}$  is obtained by inverting the nonzero elements of  $\mathbf{\Sigma}$ .

5.4.3. From (5.2.2.1),

$$\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2 = \mathbf{A} + \kappa_1 \mathbf{m}_1 - \mathbf{B} - \kappa_2 \mathbf{m}_2 \quad (5.4.3.1)$$

$$= \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{\kappa} \quad (5.4.3.2)$$

which, upon substitution from (5.4.2.1) yields

$$\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2 = \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{U}\boldsymbol{\Sigma}\mathbf{V}^\top \mathbf{V}\boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}\mathbf{U}^\top (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}) \quad (5.4.3.3)$$

$$= (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B})(\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{U}\boldsymbol{\Sigma}\boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}\mathbf{U}^\top) \quad (5.4.3.4)$$

Thus,

$$\|\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2\| = \|(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B})(\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{U}\boldsymbol{\Sigma}\boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}\mathbf{U}^\top)\| \quad (5.4.3.5)$$

## 6 CIRCLE

### 6.1 Equation

6.1.1 Find the equation of the circle passing through the points (4, 1) and (6, 5) and whose centre is on the line  $4x + y = 16$ .

**Solution:** Following Appendix 6.2.2,

$$\mathbf{x}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, c = -16. \quad (6.1.1.1)$$

Substituting in (6.2.2.2),

$$\begin{pmatrix} -4 & -1 & 0 \\ 12 & 10 & 1 \\ 8 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{u} \\ f \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 16 \\ -61 \\ -17 \end{pmatrix} \quad (6.1.1.2)$$

The augmented matrix is expressed as

$$\left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} -4 & -1 & 0 & 16 \\ 12 & 10 & 1 & -61 \\ 8 & 2 & 1 & -17 \end{array} \right) \quad (6.1.1.3)$$

Performing a sequence of row operations to transform into an Echelon form

$$\begin{array}{l} \xrightarrow[R_2 \rightarrow R_2 + 3R_1]{R_3 \rightarrow R_3 + 2R_1} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} -4 & -1 & 0 & 16 \\ 0 & 7 & 1 & -13 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 15 \end{array} \right) \end{array} \quad (6.1.1.4)$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_2 \rightarrow R_2 - R_3} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} -4 & -1 & 0 & 16 \\ 0 & 7 & 0 & -28 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 15 \end{array} \right) \quad (6.1.1.5)$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_2 \rightarrow \frac{R_2}{7}, R_1 \rightarrow -\frac{R_1}{4}} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & \frac{1}{4} & 0 & -4 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -4 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 15 \end{array} \right) \quad (6.1.1.6)$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_1 \rightarrow R_1 - \frac{1}{4}R_2} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & -3 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -4 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 15 \end{array} \right) \quad (6.1.1.7)$$

So, from (6.1.1.7)

$$\mathbf{u} = -\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}, f = 15. \quad (6.1.1.8)$$

See Fig. 6.1.1.1.

6.1.2 Find the equation of the circle passing through the points  $\mathbf{x}_1(2, 3)$  and  $\mathbf{x}_2(-1, 1)$  and whose centre is on the line  $x - 3y - 11 = 0$ .

**Solution:** Substituting numerical values in (6.2.2.2),

$$\begin{pmatrix} 4 & 6 & 1 \\ -2 & 2 & 1 \\ -1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{u} \\ f \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -13 \\ -2 \\ 11 \end{pmatrix} \quad (6.1.2.1)$$

yielding

$$\mathbf{u} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} -7 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}, f = -14. \quad (6.1.2.2)$$

See Fig. 6.1.2.1.

6.1.3 Find the equation of the circle with radius 5 whose centre lies on  $x$ -axis and passes through the point (2, 3).

**Solution:** See Fig. 6.1.3.1. From the given information,

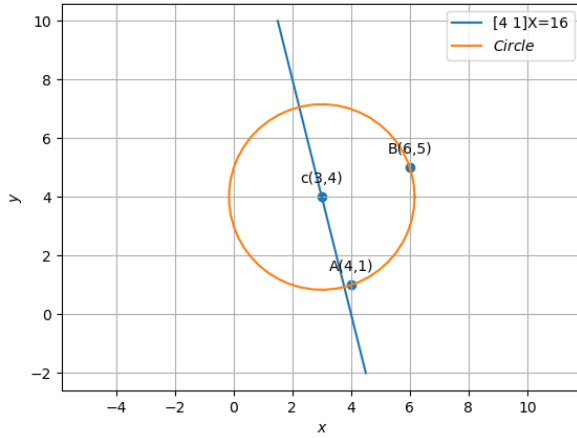


Fig. 6.1.1.1

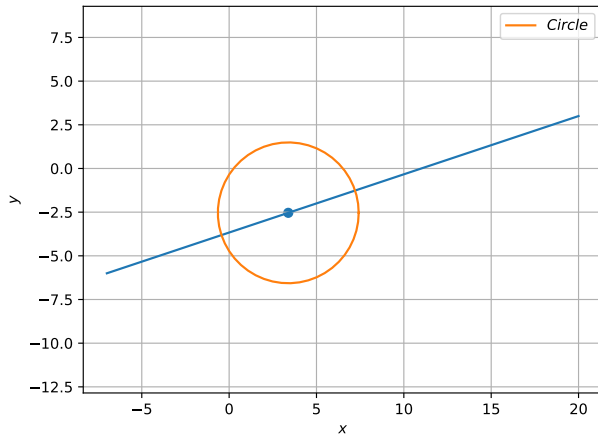


Fig. 6.1.2.1

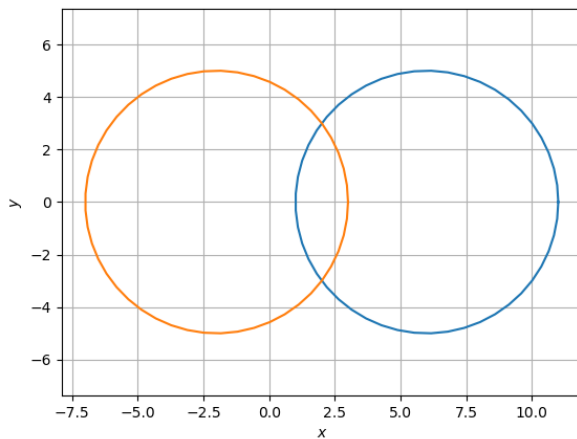


Fig. 6.1.3.1

the following equations can be formulated using (1.7.1.1).

$$\|\mathbf{P}\|^2 + 2\mathbf{u}^T \mathbf{P} + f = 0 \quad (6.1.3.1)$$

$$\mathbf{u} = k\mathbf{e}_1 \quad (6.1.3.2)$$

$$\|\mathbf{u}\|^2 - f = r^2 \quad (6.1.3.3)$$

where

$$\mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } r = 5 \quad (6.1.3.4)$$

From (6.1.3.1) and (6.1.3.3),

$$\|\mathbf{P}\|^2 + 2\mathbf{u}^T \mathbf{P} + \|\mathbf{u}\|^2 = r^2 \quad (6.1.3.5)$$

Substituting from (6.1.3.2) in the above,

$$k^2 + 2k\mathbf{e}_1^T \mathbf{P} + \|\mathbf{P}\|^2 - r^2 = 0 \quad (6.1.3.6)$$

resulting in

$$k = -\mathbf{e}_1^T \mathbf{P} \pm \sqrt{(\mathbf{e}_1^T \mathbf{P})^2 + r^2 - \|\mathbf{P}\|^2} \quad (6.1.3.7)$$

Substituting numerical values,

$$k = 2, -6 \quad (6.1.3.8)$$

resulting in circles with centre

$$-\mathbf{u} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \text{ or } \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (6.1.3.9)$$

This is verified in Fig. (6.1.3.1).

6.1.4 Find the equation of a circle with centre (2, 2) and passing through the point (4, 5).

**Solution:** From the given information

$$\mathbf{u} = -\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \quad (6.1.4.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow \|\mathbf{A}\|^2 + 2\mathbf{u}^T \mathbf{A} + f = 0 \quad (6.1.4.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow f = -\|\mathbf{A}\|^2 - 2\mathbf{u}^T \mathbf{A} = -5 \quad (6.1.4.3)$$

Hence the equation of circle is

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|^2 + 2\begin{pmatrix} -2 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} - 5 = 0 \quad (6.1.4.4)$$

See Fig. 6.1.4.1.

6.1.5 Does the point (-2.5, 3.5) lie inside, outside or on the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = 25$ ?

**Solution:** See Table 6.1.5. The given circle equation can

Condition	Inference
$\ \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{O}\ ^2 < r^2$	point lies inside the circle
$\ \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{O}\ ^2 > r^2$	point lies outside the circle
$\ \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{O}\ ^2 = r^2$	point lies on the circle

TABLE 6.1.5

be expressed as

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|^2 = 25 \quad (6.1.5.1)$$

Let,

$$\mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} -2.5 \\ 3.5 \end{pmatrix} \quad (6.1.5.2)$$

Since

$$\|\mathbf{P} - \mathbf{O}\|^2 = 18.5 < 25, \quad (6.1.5.3)$$

the point lies inside the given circle. See Fig. 6.1.5.1.

6.1.6 Find the centre of a circle passing through the points (6, -6), (3, -7) and (3, 3).

See Fig. 6.1.6.1.

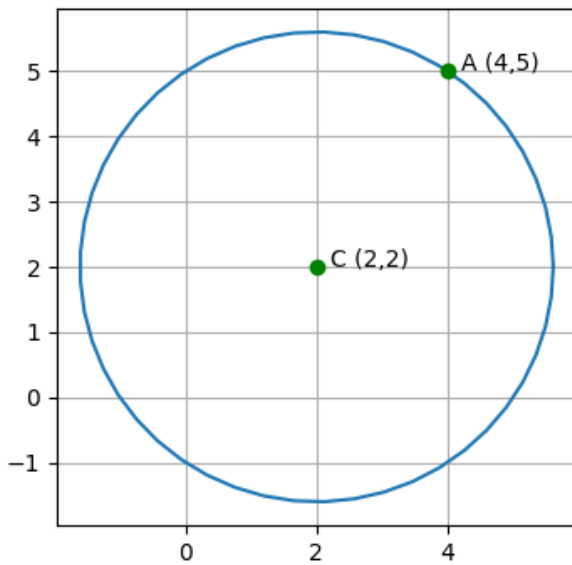


Fig. 6.1.4.1

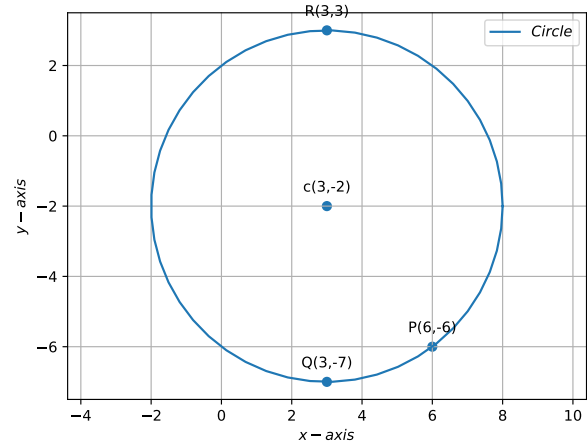


Fig. 6.1.6.1

6.1.7 Find the equation of the circle passing through (0,0) and making intercepts  $a$  and  $b$  on the coordinate axes.

In each of the following exercises, find the equation of the circle with the following parameters

6.1.8 centre (0,2) and radius 2

**Solution:** Substituting numerical values in (6.2.1.1),

$$\mathbf{u} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}, f = 0 \quad (6.1.8.1)$$

Thus, the equation of circle is obtained as

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|^2 - 2 \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = 0 \quad (6.1.8.2)$$

See Fig. 6.1.8.1.

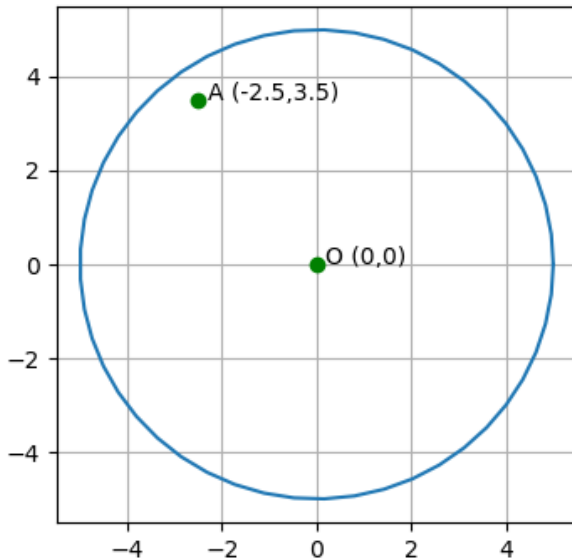


Fig. 6.1.5.1

**Solution:** Substituting numerical values in (6.2.3.1),

$$\begin{pmatrix} 6 & -14 & 1 \\ 12 & -12 & 1 \\ 6 & 6 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{u} \\ f \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -58 \\ -72 \\ -18 \end{pmatrix} \quad (6.1.6.1)$$

yielding

$$\mathbf{u} = \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (6.1.6.2)$$

$$f = -12 \quad (6.1.6.3)$$

6.1.9 centre (-2,3) and radius 4

**Solution:** Given

$$\mathbf{u} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}, r = 4. \quad (6.1.9.1)$$

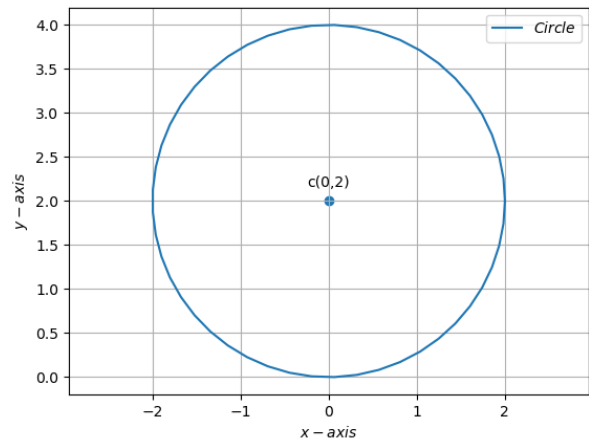


Fig. 6.1.8.1

Substituting in (6.2.1.1),

$$f = -3 \quad (6.1.9.2)$$

The equation of the circle is then obtained as

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|^2 + 2 \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} - 3 = 0 \quad (6.1.9.3)$$

See Fig. 6.1.9.1.

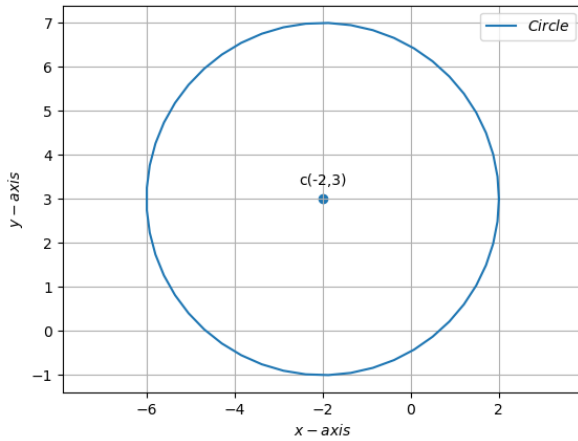


Fig. 6.1.9.1

6.1.10 centre  $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{4})$  and radius  $\frac{1}{12}$

**Solution:** Substituting numerical values in (6.2.1.1),

$$f = \frac{11}{36} \quad (6.1.10.1)$$

Thus, the equation of the circle is

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|^2 + \begin{pmatrix} -1 & -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} + \frac{11}{36} = 0 \quad (6.1.10.2)$$

See Fig. 6.1.10.1.

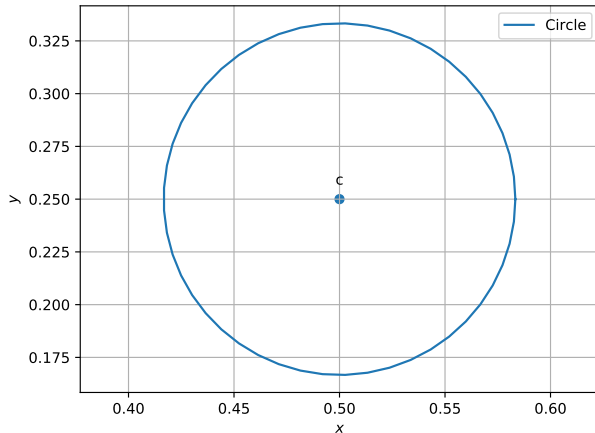


Fig. 6.1.10.1

6.1.11 centre (1, 1) and radius  $\sqrt{2}$

**Solution:** Substituting

$$r = \sqrt{2}, \mathbf{u} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (6.1.11.1)$$

in (6.2.1.1),

$$f = 0 \quad (6.1.11.2)$$

Thus, the equation of the circle is

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|^2 - 2 \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = 0 \quad (6.1.11.3)$$

See Fig. 6.1.11.1.

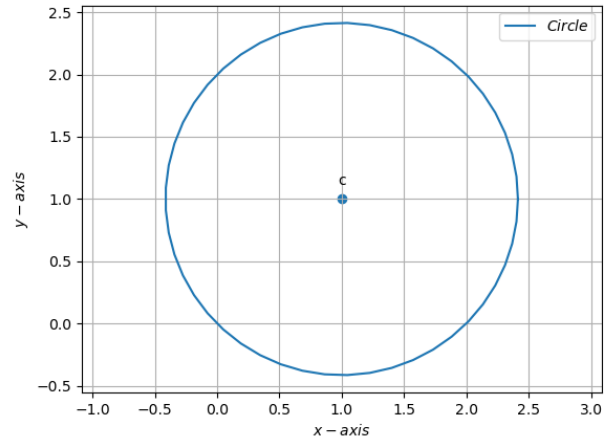


Fig. 6.1.11.1

In each of the following exercises, find the centre and radius of the circles.

6.1.12  $x^2 + y^2 + 10x - 6y - 2 = 0$ .

**Solution:** The circle parameters are

$$\mathbf{u} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}, f = -2 \quad (6.1.12.1)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{c} = \begin{pmatrix} -5 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}, r = \sqrt{\|\mathbf{u}\|^2 - f} = 6 \quad (6.1.12.2)$$

See Fig. 6.1.12.1.

6.1.13  $x^2 + y^2 - 4x - 8y - 45 = 0$

**Solution:** The given circle can be expressed as

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|^2 + 2 \begin{pmatrix} -2 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} - 45 = 0 \quad (6.1.13.1)$$

where

$$\mathbf{u} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}, f = -45 \quad (6.1.13.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{c} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}, r = \sqrt{65}. \quad (6.1.13.3)$$

See Fig. 6.1.13.1.

6.1.14  $x^2 + y^2 - 8x + 10y - 12 = 0$

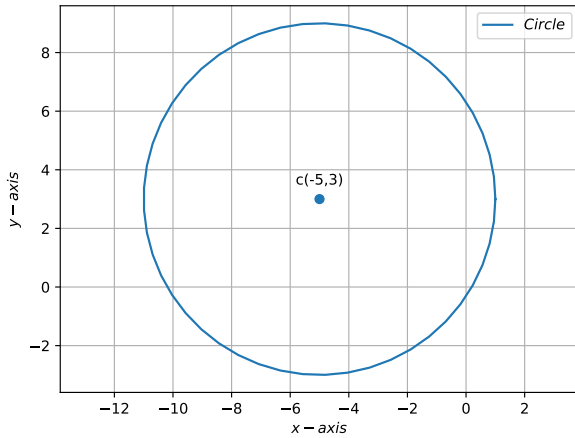


Fig. 6.1.12.1

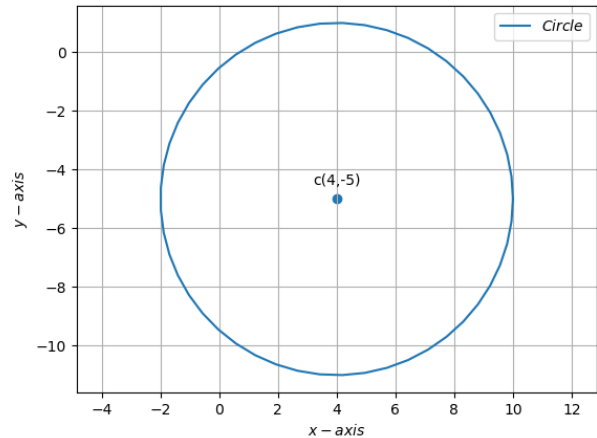


Fig. 6.1.14.1

and the radius of circle is obtained as

$$r = \sqrt{\|\mathbf{u}\|^2 - f} = \frac{1}{4} \quad (6.1.15.3)$$

See Fig. 6.1.15.1.

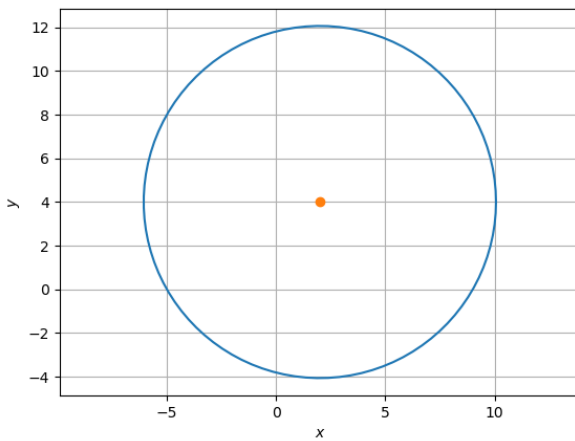


Fig. 6.1.13.1

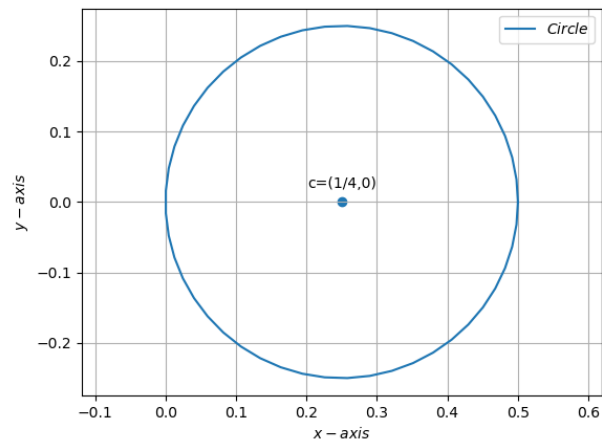


Fig. 6.1.15.1

**Solution:** From the given informtion,

$$\mathbf{u} = \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}, f = -12$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{c} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix},$$

$$r = \sqrt{\|\mathbf{u}\|^2 - f} = \sqrt{53}$$

See Fig. 6.1.14.1.

6.1.15  $2x^2 + 2y^2 - x = 0$

**Solution:** The given equation can be expressed as

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|^2 + 2 \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{4} & 0 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = 0 \quad (6.1.15.1)$$

The centre of circle is then given by

$$\mathbf{u} = -\mathbf{c} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{4} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

(6.1.14.1) 6.1.16 The area of the circle centred at (1,2) and passing through (4,6) is

- (6.1.14.2) a)  $5\pi$   
 b)  $10\pi$   
 (6.1.14.3) c)  $25\pi$   
 d) none of these

6.1.17 Equation of the circle with centre on the Y-axis and passing through the origin and the point (2,3) is

- a)  $x^2 + y^2 + 6x + 6y + 3 = 0$   
 b)  $x^2 + y^2 - 6x - 6y - 9 = 0$   
 c)  $x^2 + y^2 - 6x - 6y + 9 = 0$   
 d) none of these

(6.1.15.2) 6.1.18 Equation of the circle with centre on the y-axis and passing through the origin and the point (2,3) is

- a)  $x^2 + y^2 + 13y = 0$   
 b)  $3x^2 + 3y^2 + 13x + 3 = 0$   
 c)  $6x^2 + 6y^2 - 13x = 0$   
 d)  $x^2 + y^2 + 13x + 3 = 0$

- 6.1.19 Find the equation of a circle concentric with the circle  $x^2 + y^2 - 6x + 12y + 15 = 0$  and has double of its area.  
 6.1.20 If one end of a diameter of the circle  $x^2 + y^2 - 4x - 6y + 11 = 0$  is (3,4), then find the coordinate of the other end of the diameter.  
 6.1.21 Find the equation of the circle having (1,-2) as its centre and passing through  $3x + y = 14, 2x + 5y = 18$ .  
 6.1.22 If the lines  $2x - 3y = 5$  and  $3x - 4y = 7$  are the diameters of a circle of area 154 square units, then obtain the equation of the circle.  
 6.1.23 Find the equation of the circle which passes through the points (2,3) and (4,5) and the centre lies on the straight line  $y - 4x + 3 = 0$ .  
 6.1.24 Find the equation of a circle passing through the point (7,3) having radius 3 units and whose centre lies on the line  $y = x - 1$ .

State whether the statements are True or False

- 6.1.25 The line  $x^2 + 3y = 0$  is a diameter of the circle  $x^2 + y^2 + 6x + 2y = 0$ .  
 6.1.26 The point (1,2) lies inside the circle  $x^2 + y^2 - 2x + 6y + 1 = 0$ .

## 6.2 Formulae

- 6.2.1. For a circle with centre  $\mathbf{c}$  and radius  $r$ ,

$$\mathbf{u} = -\mathbf{c}, f = \|\mathbf{u}\|^2 - r^2 \quad (6.2.1.1)$$

- 6.2.2. Given points  $\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2$  on the circle and the diameter

$$\mathbf{n}^\top \mathbf{x} = c, \quad (6.2.2.1)$$

the centre is given by

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2\mathbf{x}_1 & 2\mathbf{x}_2 & \mathbf{n} \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}^\top \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{u} \\ f \end{pmatrix} = - \begin{pmatrix} \|\mathbf{x}_1\|^2 \\ \|\mathbf{x}_2\|^2 \\ c \end{pmatrix} \quad (6.2.2.2)$$

**Solution:** From (1.7.1.1),

$$\begin{aligned} \|\mathbf{x}_1\|^2 + 2\mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{x}_1 + f &= 0 \\ \|\mathbf{x}_2\|^2 + 2\mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{x}_2 + f &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (6.2.2.3)$$

and (6.2.2.1) can be expressed as

$$\mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{n} = -c \quad (6.2.2.4)$$

Clubbing (6.2.2.3) and (6.2.2.4), we obtain (6.2.2.2).

- 6.2.3. Given points  $\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2, \mathbf{x}_3$  on the circle, the parameters are given by

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2\mathbf{x}_1 & 2\mathbf{x}_2 & 2\mathbf{x}_3 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}^\top \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{u} \\ f \end{pmatrix} = - \begin{pmatrix} \|\mathbf{x}_1\|^2 \\ \|\mathbf{x}_2\|^2 \\ \|\mathbf{x}_3\|^2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (6.2.3.1)$$

## 6.3 Miscellaneous

- 6.3.1 Find the equation of the circle passing through (0,0) and making intercepts  $a$  and  $b$  on the coordinate axes.

- 6.3.2 Find the equation of a circle with centre  $(-a, -b)$  and radius  $\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}$ .

**Solution:** From (6.2.1.1),

$$\mathbf{u} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix}, f = 2b^2 \quad (6.3.2.1)$$

Thus, the equation of circle is

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|^2 + 2 \begin{pmatrix} a & b \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} + 2b^2 = 0 \quad (6.3.2.2)$$

- 6.3.3 The equation of a circle with origin as centre and passing through the vertices of an equilateral triangle whose median is of length  $3a$  is

- a)  $x^2 + y^2 = 9a^2$   
 b)  $x^2 + y^2 = 16a^2$   
 c)  $x^2 + y^2 = 4a^2$   
 d)  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$

- 6.3.4 Show that the point  $(x, y)$  given by  $x = \frac{2at}{1+t^2}$  and  $y = \frac{a(1-t^2)}{1+t^2}$  lies on a circle for all real values of  $t$  such that  $-1 \leq t \leq 1$  where  $a$  is any given real number.

- 6.3.5 If a circle passes through the point (0,0),  $(a, 0)$  and  $(0, b)$  then find the coordinates of its centre.

## 7 CONICS

### 7.1 Equation

In the each of the following exercises, find the coordinates of the focus, vertex, eccentricity, axis of the conic section, the equation of the directrix and the length of the latus rectum.

- 7.1.1  $y^2 = 12x$

**Solution:** See Table 7.1.5 and Fig. 7.1.1.1.

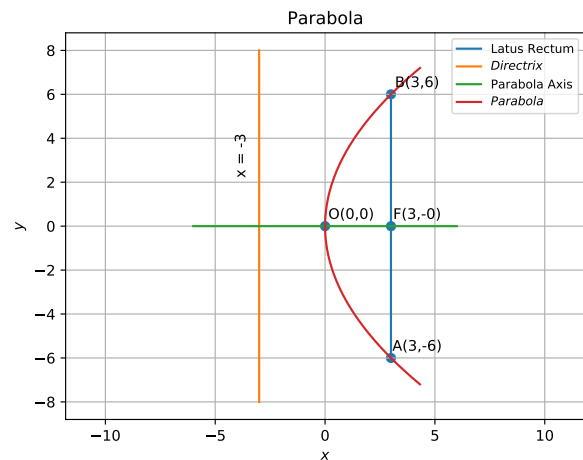


Fig. 7.1.1.1

- 7.1.2  $y^2 = -8x$

**Solution:** See Table 7.1.5 and Fig. 7.1.2.1.

- 7.1.3  $\frac{x^2}{36} + \frac{y^2}{16} = 1$

**Solution:** See Table 7.1.5 and Fig. 7.1.3.1.

- 7.1.4  $\frac{x^2}{16} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$

**Solution:** See Table 7.1.5 and Fig. 7.1.4.1.

- 7.1.5  $\frac{x^2}{16} - \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$

**Solution:** See Table 7.1.5 and Fig. 7.1.5.1.



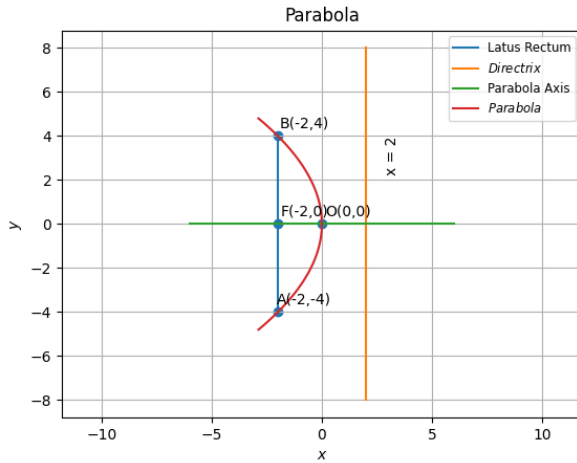


Fig. 7.1.2.1: Graph

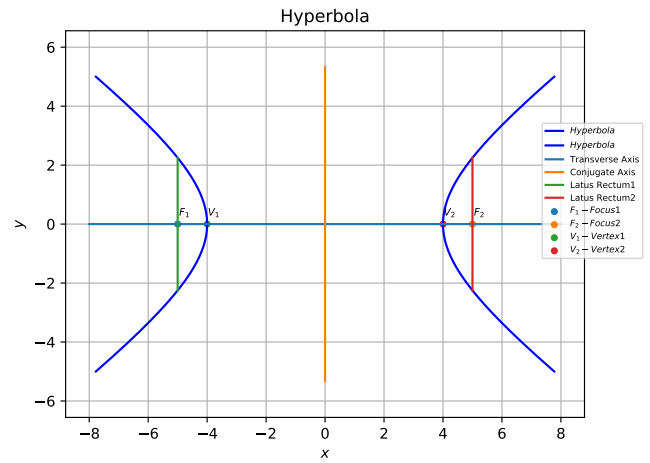


Fig. 7.1.5.1

TABLE 7.1.5

Conic	Input			Output		
	$\mathbf{V}$	$\mathbf{u}$	$f$	$\mathbf{F}$	Directrix	Latus Rectum
$y^2 = 12x$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$-6\mathbf{e}_1$	0	$3\mathbf{e}_1$	$\mathbf{e}_1^T \mathbf{x} = -3$	12
$y^2 = -8x$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$4\mathbf{e}_1$	0	$2\mathbf{e}_1$	$\mathbf{e}_1^T \mathbf{x} = 2$	8
$\frac{x^2}{36} + \frac{y^2}{16} = 1$	$\begin{pmatrix} 4 & 0 \\ 0 & 9 \end{pmatrix}$	$\mathbf{0}$	-144	$2\sqrt{5}\mathbf{e}_1$	$\mathbf{e}_1^T \mathbf{x} = \frac{18}{\sqrt{5}}$	$\frac{16}{3}$
$\frac{x^2}{16} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$	$\begin{pmatrix} 9 & 0 \\ 0 & 16 \end{pmatrix}$	$\mathbf{0}$	-144	$\pm\sqrt{7}\mathbf{e}_1$	$\mathbf{e}_1^T \mathbf{x} = \frac{16}{\sqrt{7}}$	$\frac{9}{2}$
$\frac{x^2}{16} - \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$	$\begin{pmatrix} 9 & 0 \\ 0 & -16 \end{pmatrix}$	$\mathbf{0}$	-144	$\pm 5\mathbf{e}_1$	$\mathbf{e}_1^T \mathbf{x} = \frac{16}{5}$	$\frac{9}{2}$

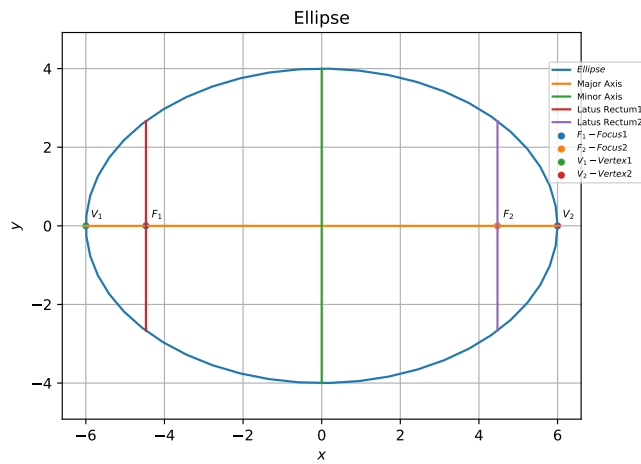


Fig. 7.1.3.1

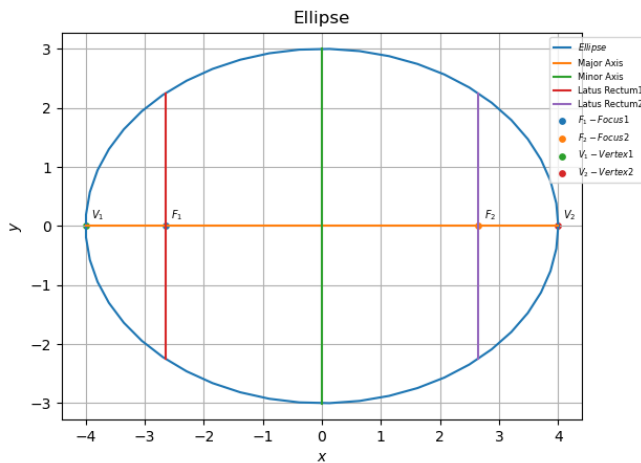


Fig. 7.1.4.1

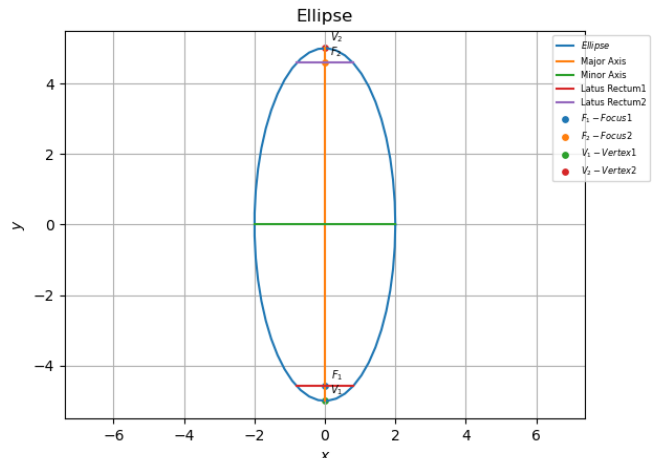


Fig. 7.1.6.1

**Solution:** From Table 7.1.10, it can be seen that this is not a standard ellipse, since  $\lambda_1 > \lambda_2$ . Hence  $\mathbf{P}$  plays a role and we need to use the affine transformation

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{P}\mathbf{y} \quad (7.1.6.1)$$

So the value of  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$  need to be interchanged for all calculations and in (7.2.3.1),  $\mathbf{e}_2$  becomes the normal vector. See Fig. 7.1.6.1.

$$7.1.6 \quad \frac{x^2}{4} + \frac{y^2}{25} = 1$$

7.1.7  $5y^2 - 9x^2 = 36$ .

**Solution:**

See Table 7.1.10 and Fig. 7.1.7.1. In Table 7.1.10, **P** shifts the negative eigenvalue to get the hyperbola in standard form.

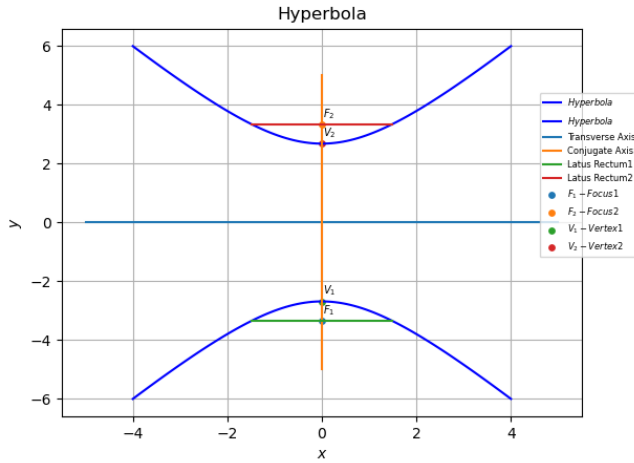


Fig. 7.1.7.1

7.1.8  $\frac{y^2}{9} - \frac{x^2}{27} = 1$ .

**Solution:**

See Table 7.1.10 and Fig. 7.1.8.1.

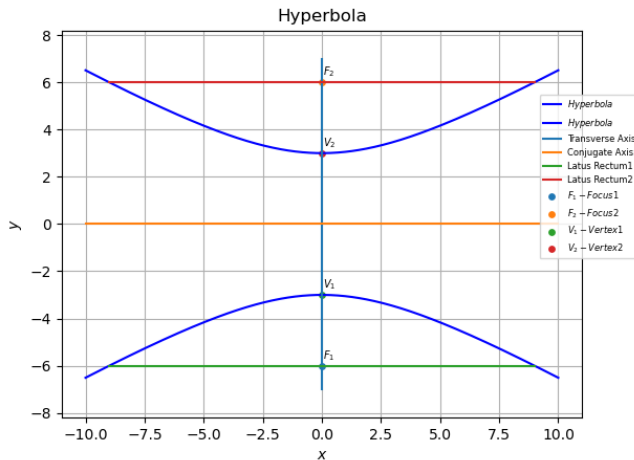


Fig. 7.1.8.1

7.1.9  $x^2 = -16y$

**Solution:** See Table 7.1.10 and Fig. 7.1.9.1.

7.1.10  $x^2 = 6y$

**Solution:** See Table 7.1.10 and Fig. 7.1.10.1.

7.1.11  $x^2 = -9y$

7.1.12  $\frac{x^2}{25} + \frac{y^2}{100} = 1$

7.1.13  $\frac{x^2}{49} + \frac{y^2}{36} = 1$

7.1.14  $\frac{x^2}{100} + \frac{y^2}{400} = 1$

7.1.15  $36x^2 + 4y^2 = 144$

7.1.16  $16x^2 + y^2 = 16$

7.1.17  $4x^2 + 9y^2 = 36$

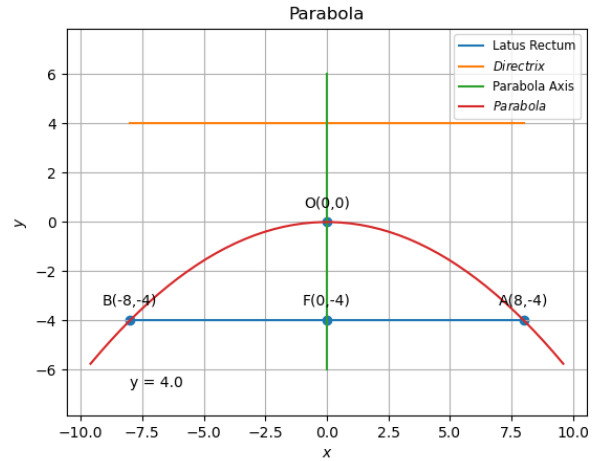


Fig. 7.1.9.1

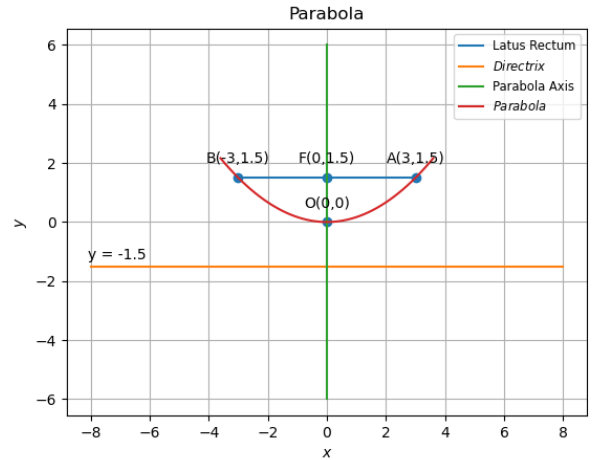


Fig. 7.1.10.1

TABLE 7.1.10

Conic	Input			Intermediate		Output		
	V	u	f	P	F	Directrix	Latus Rectum	
$\frac{x^2}{4} + \frac{y^2}{25} = 1$	$\begin{pmatrix} 25 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$	$\mathbf{0}$	-100	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	$\pm \sqrt{21} \mathbf{e}_2$	$\mathbf{e}_2^T \mathbf{x} = \pm \frac{25}{\sqrt{21}}$	$\frac{8}{5}$	
$5y^2 - 9x^2 = 36$	$\begin{pmatrix} -9 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 \end{pmatrix}$	$\mathbf{0}$	-36	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	$\pm 3 \sqrt{\frac{5}{14}} \mathbf{e}_2$	$\mathbf{e}_2^T \mathbf{x} = \pm \frac{18}{\sqrt{70}}$	$4 \frac{\sqrt{5}}{3}$	
$\frac{x^2}{9} - \frac{y^2}{27} = 1$	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$	$\mathbf{0}$	-27	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	$\pm 6 \mathbf{e}_2$	$\mathbf{e}_2^T \mathbf{x} = \pm \frac{3}{2}$	18	
$x^2 = -16y$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix}$	0	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	$-4 \mathbf{e}_2$	$\mathbf{e}_2^T \mathbf{x} = 4$	16	
$x^2 = 6y$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	$-\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$	0	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	$\frac{3}{2} \mathbf{e}_2$	$\mathbf{e}_2^T \mathbf{x} = -\frac{3}{2}$	6	

7.1.18  $y^2 = 10x$

In each of the following exercises, find the equation of the conic, that satisfies the given conditions.

7.1.19 foci  $(\pm 4, 0)$ , latus rectum of length 12.

**Solution:** The given information is available in Table 7.1.19. Since two foci are given, the conic cannot be a parabola.

a) The direction vector of  $F_1 F_2$  is the normal vector of

the directrix. Hence,

$$\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{F}_1 - \mathbf{F}_2 \equiv \mathbf{e}_1 \quad (7.1.19.1)$$

Substituting in (A.2.2), (A.2.3) and (A.2.4),

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 - e^2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (7.1.19.2)$$

$$\mathbf{u} = ce^2 \mathbf{e}_1 - \mathbf{F} \quad (7.1.19.3)$$

$$f = 16 - c^2 e^2 \quad (7.1.19.4)$$

b) From (7.1.19.2),

$$\lambda_1 = 1 - e^2, \lambda_2 = 1 \quad (7.1.19.5)$$

which upon substituting in (7.2.12.1), along with the value of the latus rectum from Table 7.1.19

$$6(1 - e^2) = \sqrt{|f|} \quad (7.1.19.6)$$

c) The centre of the conic is given by

$$\mathbf{c} = \frac{\mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2}{2} = \mathbf{0} \quad (7.1.19.7)$$

From (7.1.19.2), it is obvious that  $\mathbf{V}$  is invertible. Hence, from (7.1.19.7) and (A.5.4),

$$\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0} \quad (7.1.19.8)$$

Substituting the above in (7.1.19.3),

$$\mathbf{F} = ce^2 \mathbf{e}_1 \implies \|\mathbf{F}\| = 4 = ce^2 \quad (7.1.19.9)$$

d) From (7.2.2.3), (7.1.19.8) and (7.1.19.4),

$$36(1 - e^2)^2 = 16 - c^2 e^2 \quad (7.1.19.10)$$

From (7.1.19.9) and (7.1.19.10)

$$\frac{4}{e\sqrt{e^2 - 1}} = 6 \quad (7.1.19.11)$$

$$\implies 9e^2(e^2 - 1) = 4 \quad (7.1.19.12)$$

$$\implies 9e^4 - 9e^2 - 4 = 0 \quad (7.1.19.13)$$

$$\text{or, } (3e^2 - 4)(12e^2 + 1) = 0 \quad (7.1.19.14)$$

yielding

$$e = \frac{4}{3} \quad (7.1.19.15)$$

as the only viable solution.

The equation of the conic is then obtained as

$$\mathbf{x}^T \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{3} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} + 4 = 0 \quad (7.1.19.16)$$

See Fig. 7.1.19.1.

Parameter	Description	Value
$\mathbf{F}_1$	Focus 1 of hyperbola	$\begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$
$\mathbf{F}_2$	Focus 2 of hyperbola	$\begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$
$l$	Length of latus rectum	12

TABLE 7.1.19

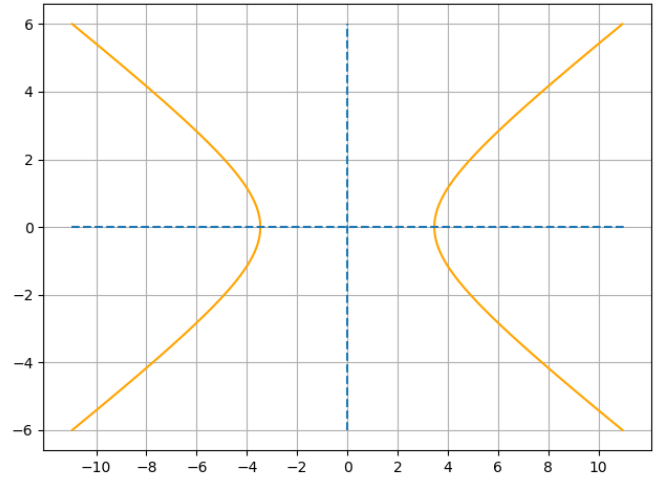


Fig. 7.1.19.1

7.1.20 eccentricity  $e = \frac{4}{3}$ , vertices

$$\mathbf{P}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{P}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} -7 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (7.1.20.1)$$

**Solution:** The major axis of a conic is the chord which passes through the vertices of the conic. The direction vector of the major axis in this case is

$$\mathbf{P}_2 - \mathbf{P}_1 \equiv \mathbf{e}_1 = \mathbf{n} \quad (7.1.20.2)$$

which is the normal vector for the directrix. Since  $e > 1$ , the conic is a hyperbola. Substituting (7.1.20.2) in (A.2.2), (A.2.3) and (A.2.4),

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 - e^2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{7}{9} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (7.1.20.3)$$

$$\mathbf{u} = ce^2 \mathbf{e}_1 - \mathbf{F} \quad (7.1.20.4)$$

$$f = 16 - c^2 e^2 \quad (7.1.20.5)$$

Thus,

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 - e^2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (7.1.20.6)$$

$$\mathbf{u} = ce^2 \mathbf{e}_1 - \mathbf{F} \quad (7.1.20.7)$$

$$f = \|\mathbf{F}\|^2 - c^2 e^2 \quad (7.1.20.8)$$

The centre of the hyperbola is

$$\mathbf{c} = \frac{\mathbf{P}_1 + \mathbf{P}_2}{2} = \mathbf{0} = \mathbf{u} \quad (7.1.20.9)$$

from (A.5.4). Substituting  $\mathbf{P}_1$  and  $\mathbf{P}_2$  in (A.2.1),

$$\mathbf{P}_1^T \mathbf{V} \mathbf{P}_1 + 2\mathbf{u}^T \mathbf{P}_1 + f = 0 \quad (7.1.20.10)$$

$$\mathbf{P}_2^T \mathbf{V} \mathbf{P}_2 + 2\mathbf{u}^T \mathbf{P}_2 + f = 0 \quad (7.1.20.11)$$

$$\implies f = \mathbf{P}_1^T \mathbf{V} \mathbf{P}_1 = 49(e^2 - 1) = \frac{343}{9} \quad (7.1.20.12)$$

upon adding (7.1.20.11) and (7.1.20.10) and simplifying.

Therefore, the equation of the conic is

$$\mathbf{x}^T \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{7}{9} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} + \frac{343}{9} = 0 \quad (7.1.20.13)$$

See Fig. 7.1.20.1.

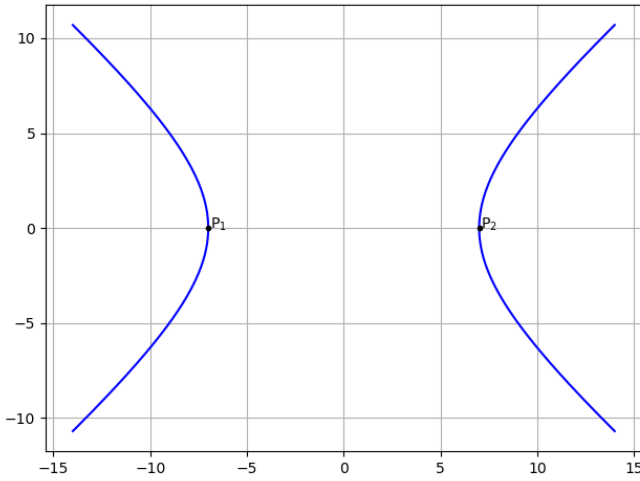


Fig. 7.1.20.1

7.1.21 centre at  $\mathbf{c}(0,0)$ , major axis on the y-axis and passes through the points  $\mathbf{P}(3,2)$  and  $\mathbf{Q}(1,6)$ .

**Solution:** Since the major axis is along the y-axis,

$$\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{e}_2 \quad (7.1.21.1)$$

Thus,

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 - e^2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (7.1.21.2)$$

Since

$$\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}. \quad (7.1.21.3)$$

From (A.2.1),

$$\mathbf{P}^T \mathbf{V} \mathbf{P} + 2\mathbf{u}^T \mathbf{P} + f = 0 \quad (7.1.21.4)$$

$$\mathbf{Q}^T \mathbf{V} \mathbf{Q} + 2\mathbf{u}^T \mathbf{Q} + f = 0 \quad (7.1.21.5)$$

yielding

$$4e^2 - f = 13 \quad (7.1.21.6)$$

$$36e^2 - f = 37 \quad (7.1.21.7)$$

which can be formulated as the matrix equation

$$\begin{pmatrix} 4 & -1 \\ 36 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} e^2 \\ f \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 13 \\ 37 \end{pmatrix} \quad (7.1.21.8)$$

The augmented matrix is given by,

$$\left( \begin{array}{cc|c} 4 & -1 & 13 \\ 36 & -1 & 37 \end{array} \right) \quad (7.1.21.9)$$

yielding

$$\xleftrightarrow{R_1 \leftarrow R_1 - R_2} \left( \begin{array}{cc|c} -32 & 0 & -24 \\ 36 & -1 & 37 \end{array} \right) \quad (7.1.21.10)$$

$$\xleftrightarrow{R_1 \leftarrow -\frac{R_1}{8}} \left( \begin{array}{cc|c} 4 & 0 & 3 \\ 36 & -1 & 37 \end{array} \right) \quad (7.1.21.11)$$

$$\xleftrightarrow{R_2 \leftarrow R_2 - 9R_1} \left( \begin{array}{cc|c} 4 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & -1 & 10 \end{array} \right) \quad (7.1.21.12)$$

$$\xleftrightarrow{\begin{array}{l} R_1 \leftarrow \frac{R_1}{4} \\ R_2 \leftarrow -R_2 \end{array}} \left( \begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 0 & \frac{3}{4} \\ 0 & 1 & -10 \end{array} \right) \quad (7.1.21.13)$$

Thus,

$$e^2 = \frac{3}{4}, f = -10 \quad (7.1.21.14)$$

and the equation of the conic is given by

$$\mathbf{x}^T \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{4} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} - 10 = 0 \quad (7.1.21.15)$$

See Fig. 7.1.21.1.

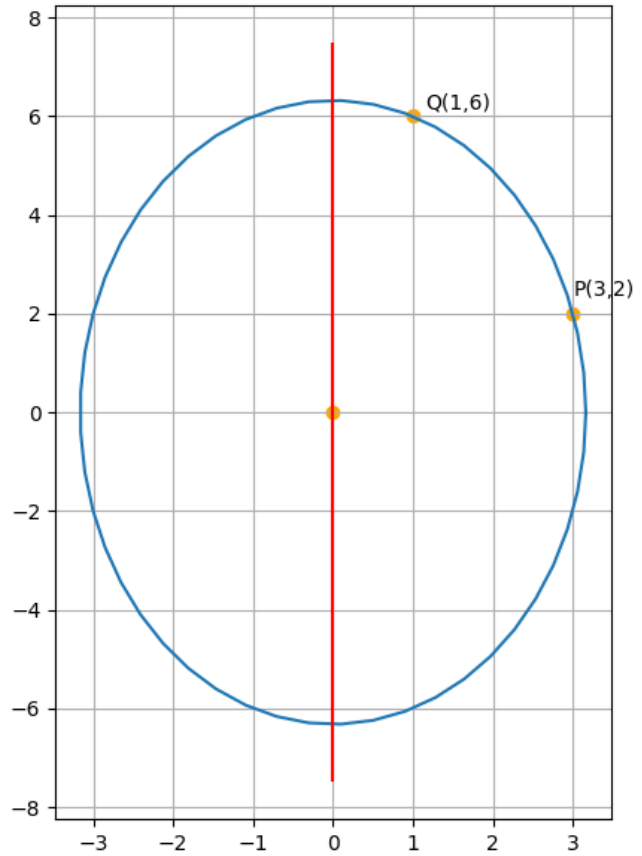


Fig. 7.1.21.1: Graph

7.1.22 major axis on the x-axis and passes through the points (4,3) and (6,2).

**Solution:**

7.1.23 vertices  $\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \pm 3 \end{pmatrix}$  and foci  $\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \pm 5 \end{pmatrix}$ .

**Solution:**

7.1.24 focus(6,0); directrix  $x=-6$

- 7.1.25 focus(0,-3); directrix  $y=3$   
 7.1.26 vertex(0,0); focus(3,0)  
 7.1.27 vertex(0,0); focus(-2,0)  
 7.1.28 vertex(0,0) passing through(2,3) and axis is along x-axis  
 7.1.29 vertex(0,0) passing through(5,2) symmetric with respect to y-axis  
 7.1.30 vertices  $(0, \pm 5)$ , foci  $(0, \pm 8)$ .  
 7.1.31 vertices  $(\pm 5, 0)$ , foci  $(\pm 4, 0)$ .  
 7.1.32 vertices  $(\pm 0, 13)$ , foci  $(0, \pm 5)$ .  
 7.1.33 vertices  $(\pm 6, 0)$ , foci  $(\pm 4, 0)$ .  
 7.1.34 ends of major axis  $(\pm 3, 0)$ , ends of minor axis  $(0, \pm 2)$ .  
 7.1.35 ends of major axis  $(0, \pm \sqrt{5})$ , ends of minor axis  $(\pm 1, 0)$ .  
 7.1.36 length of major axis 26, foci  $(\pm 5, 0)$ .  
 7.1.37 length of minor axis 16, foci  $(0, \pm 6)$ .  
 7.1.38 foci  $(\pm 3, 0)$ ,  $a = 4$ .  
 7.1.39 vertex  $(0, 4)$ , focus  $(0, 2)$ .  
 7.1.40 vertex  $(-3, 0)$ , directrix  $x + 5 = 0$ .  
 7.1.41 focus  $(0, -3)$  and directrix  $y = 3$ .  
 7.1.42 Directrix  $x = 0$ , focus at  $(6, 0)$   
 7.1.43 vertex at  $(0, 4)$ , focus at  $(0, 2)$   
 7.1.44 focus at  $(-1, 2)$ , directrix  $x - 2y + 3 = 0$   
 7.1.45 vertices  $(\pm 5, 0)$ , foci  $(\pm 7, 0)$   
 7.1.46 vertices  $(0 \pm 7)$ ,  $e = \frac{4}{3}$   
 7.1.47 foci  $(0, \pm \sqrt{10})$ , passing through  $(2, 3)$   
 7.1.48 vertices at  $(0, \pm 6)$ , eccentricity  $\frac{5}{3}$   
 7.1.49 focus  $(-1, -2)$ , directrix  $x - 2y + 3 = 0$   
 7.1.50 eccentricity  $\frac{3}{2}$ , foci  $(\pm 2, 0)$ .  
 7.1.51 If the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$  passes through the point  $(3, 2)$ , then the length of its latus rectum is  
 a)  $2 \pm 3$   
 b)  $4 \pm 4$   
 c)  $1 \pm 3$   
 d) 4  
 7.1.52 Find the coordinates of a point on the parabola  $y^2 = 8x$  whose focal distance is 4.  
 7.1.53 Find the length of the line segment joining the vertex of the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$  and a point on the parabola where the line segment makes an angle  $\theta$  to the x-axis.

Fill in the Blanks

- 7.54 show that the set of all points such that the difference of their distances from  $(4, 0)$  and  $(-4, 0)$  is always equal to 2 represent a hyperbola .  
 7.55 If the distance between the foci of a hyperbola is 16 and its eccentricity is  $\sqrt{2}$ , then obtain the equation of the hyperbola.  
 7.56 Find the eccentricity of the hyperbola  $9y^2 - 4x^2 = 36$ .  
 7.57 The eccentricity of the hyperbola whose latus rectum is 8 and conjugate axis is equal to half of the distance between the foci is  
 a)  $4 \pm 3$   
 b)  $\frac{4}{\sqrt{3}}$   
 c)  $\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}$   
 d) none of these  
 7.58 The distance between the foci of a hyperbola is 16 and its eccentricity is  $\leq 2$ . Its equation is  
 a)  $x^2 - y^2 = 3^2$

- b)  $\frac{x^2}{4} - \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$   
 c)  $2x - 3y^2 = 7$   
 d) none of these

- 7.59 Equation of the hyperbola with eccentricity  $3 \pm 2$  and foci at  $(\pm 2, 0)$  is  
 a)  $\frac{x^2}{4} - \frac{y^2}{5} = \frac{4}{9}$   
 b)  $\frac{x^2}{9} - \frac{y^2}{9} = \frac{4}{9}$   
 c)  $\frac{x^2}{4} - \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$   
 d) none of these.  
 7.60 If the latus rectum of an ellipse is equal to half of minor axis, then find its eccentricity.  
 7.61 Given the ellipse with equation  $9x^2 + 25y^2 = 225$ , find the eccentricity and foci.  
 7.62 If the eccentricity of an ellipse is  $\frac{5}{8}$  and the distance between its foci is 10 then find latus rectum of the ellipse.  
 7.63 eccentricity  $\frac{2}{3}$ , latus rectum 5, centre  $(0, 0)$ .  
 7.64 Find the distance between the directrices of the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{36} + \frac{y^2}{20} = 1$   
 7.65 Find the equation of the set of all points the sum of whose distances from the points  $(3, 0)$  and  $(9, 0)$  is 12.  
 7.66 Find the equation of the set of all points whose distance from  $(0, 4)$  are  $2 \pm 3$  of their distance from the line  $y = 9$ .  
 7.67 The equation of the ellipse whose focus is  $(1, -1)$ , the directrix the line  $x - y - 3 = 0$  and eccentricity  $1 \pm 2$  is  
 a)  $7x^2 + 2xy + 7y^2 - 10x + 10y + 7 = 0$   
 b)  $7x^2 + 2xy + 7y^2 + 7 = 0$   
 c)  $7x^2 + 2xy + 7y^2 + 10x - 10y - 7 = 0$   
 d) none  
 7.68 The length of the latus rectum of the ellipse  $3x^2 + y^2 = 12$  is  
 a) 4  
 b) 3  
 c) 8  
 d)  $4\sqrt{3}$   
 7.69 If  $P$  is a point on the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{16} + \frac{y^2}{25} = 1$  whose foci are  $s$  and  $s'$  then  $Ps + Ps' = 8$ .

## 7.2 Formulae

- 7.2.1. For a symmetric matrix, from (1.7.7.1), we have the eigendecomposition

$$\mathbf{V} = \mathbf{PDP}^T \quad (7.2.1.1)$$

where

$$\mathbf{P} = (\mathbf{p}_1 \quad \mathbf{p}_2), \quad \mathbf{P}^T \mathbf{P} = \mathbf{I} \quad (7.2.1.2)$$

$$\mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (7.2.1.3)$$

- 7.2.2. Using the affine transformation in (2.12.1.1), the conic in (A.2.1) can be expressed in standard form as

$$\mathbf{y}^T \left( \frac{\mathbf{D}}{f_0} \right) \mathbf{y} = 1 \quad |\mathbf{V}| \neq 0 \quad (7.2.2.1)$$

$$\mathbf{y}^T \mathbf{D} \mathbf{y} = -\eta \mathbf{e}_1^T \mathbf{y} \quad |\mathbf{V}| = 0 \quad (7.2.2.2)$$

where

$$f_0 = \mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{u} - f \neq 0 \quad (7.2.2.3)$$

$$\eta = 2\mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{p}_1 \quad (7.2.2.4)$$

$$\mathbf{e}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (7.2.2.5)$$

**Solution:** See Appendix A.5.

7.2.3.

a) The directrices for the standard conic are given by

$$\mathbf{e}_1^\top \mathbf{y} = \pm \sqrt{\left| \frac{f_0 \lambda_2}{\lambda_1 (\lambda_2 - \lambda_1)} \right|} \quad e \neq 1 \quad (7.2.3.1)$$

$$\mathbf{e}_1^\top \mathbf{y} = \frac{\eta}{2\lambda_2} \quad e = 1 \quad (7.2.3.2)$$

b) The foci of the standard conic are given by

$$\mathbf{F} = \begin{cases} \pm \sqrt{f_0 \left( \frac{1}{\lambda_2} - \frac{1}{\lambda_1} \right)} \mathbf{e}_1 & e \neq 1 \\ -\frac{\eta}{4\lambda_2} \mathbf{e}_1 & e = 1 \end{cases} \quad (7.2.3.3)$$

*Proof.* For the standard conic,

$$\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{I} \quad (7.2.3.4)$$

$$\mathbf{u} = \begin{cases} 0 & e \neq 1 \\ \frac{\eta}{2} \mathbf{e}_1 & e = 1 \end{cases} \quad (7.2.3.5)$$

$$\lambda_1 \begin{cases} = 0 & e = 1 \\ \neq 0 & e \neq 1 \end{cases} \quad (7.2.3.6)$$

where

$$\mathbf{I} = (\mathbf{e}_1 \quad \mathbf{e}_2) \quad (7.2.3.7)$$

is the identity matrix.

a) For the standard hyperbola/ellipse in (7.2.2.1), from (7.2.3.4), (A.3.2) and (7.2.3.5),

$$\mathbf{n} = \sqrt{\frac{\lambda_2}{f_0}} \mathbf{e}_1 \quad (7.2.3.8)$$

$$c = \pm \frac{\sqrt{-\frac{\lambda_2}{f_0} (e^2 - 1) \left( \frac{\lambda_2}{f_0} \right)}}{\frac{\lambda_2}{f_0} e (e^2 - 1)} \quad (7.2.3.9)$$

$$= \pm \frac{1}{e \sqrt{1 - e^2}} \quad (7.2.3.10)$$

yielding (7.2.3.1) upon substituting from (A.3.1) and simplifying. For the standard parabola in (7.2.2.2), from (7.2.3.4), (A.3.2) and (7.2.3.5), noting that  $f = 0$ ,

$$\mathbf{n} = \sqrt{\lambda_2} \mathbf{e}_1 \quad (7.2.3.11)$$

$$c = \frac{\left\| \frac{\eta}{2} \mathbf{e}_1 \right\|^2}{2 \left( \frac{\eta}{2} \right) (\mathbf{e}_1)^\top \mathbf{n}} \quad (7.2.3.12)$$

$$= \frac{\eta}{4 \sqrt{\lambda_2}} \quad (7.2.3.13)$$

$$= \frac{\eta}{4 \sqrt{\lambda_2}} \quad (7.2.3.14)$$

yielding (7.2.3.2).

b) For the standard ellipse/hyperbola, substituting from

(7.2.3.10), (7.2.3.8), (7.2.3.5) and (A.3.1) in (A.3.3),

$$\mathbf{F} = \pm \frac{\left( \frac{1}{e \sqrt{1 - e^2}} \right) (e^2) \sqrt{\frac{\lambda_2}{f_0}} \mathbf{e}_1}{\frac{\lambda_2}{f_0}} \quad (7.2.3.15)$$

$$= \pm \sqrt{\left| \frac{f_0}{\left( 1 - \frac{\lambda_1}{\lambda_2} \right) \frac{\lambda_1}{\lambda_2}} \right|} \left( 1 - \frac{\lambda_1}{\lambda_2} \right) \frac{\sqrt{\lambda_2}}{\lambda_2} \mathbf{e}_1 \quad (7.2.3.16)$$

yielding (7.2.3.3) after simplification. For the standard parabola, substituting from (7.2.3.14), (7.2.3.11), (7.2.3.5) and (A.3.1) in (A.3.3),

$$\mathbf{F} = \frac{\left( \frac{\eta}{4 \sqrt{\lambda_2}} \right) \sqrt{\lambda_2} \mathbf{e}_1 - \frac{\eta}{2} \mathbf{e}_1}{\lambda_2} \quad (7.2.3.17)$$

$$(7.2.3.18)$$

yielding (7.2.3.3) after simplification.  $\square$

7.2.4. The equation of the minor and major axes for the ellipse/hyperbola are respectively given by

$$\mathbf{p}_i^\top (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{c}) = 0, i = 1, 2 \quad (7.2.4.1)$$

The axis of symmetry for the parabola is also given by (7.2.4.1).

*Proof.* From (7.2.6), the major/symmetry axis for the hyperbola/ellipse/parabola can be expressed using (2.12.1.1) as

$$\mathbf{e}_2^\top \mathbf{P}^\top (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{c}) = 0 \quad (7.2.4.2)$$

$$\implies (\mathbf{P} \mathbf{e}_2)^\top (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{c}) = 0 \quad (7.2.4.3)$$

yielding (7.2.4.1), and the proof for the minor axis is similar.  $\square$

7.2.5. The center of the standard ellipse/hyperbola, defined to be the mid point of the line joining the foci, is the origin.

7.2.6. The principal (major) axis of the standard ellipse/hyperbola, defined to be the line joining the two foci is the  $x$ -axis.

*Proof.* From (7.2.3.3), it is obvious that the line joining the foci passes through the origin. Also, the direction vector of this line is  $\mathbf{e}_1$ . Thus, the principal axis is the  $x$ -axis.  $\square$

7.2.7. The minor axis of the standard ellipse/hyperbola, defined to be the line orthogonal to the  $x$ -axis is the  $y$ -axis.

7.2.8. The axis of symmetry of the standard parabola, defined to be the line perpendicular to the directrix and passing through the focus, is the  $x$ -axis.

*Proof.* From (7.2.3.11) and (7.2.3.3), the axis of the parabola can be expressed as

$$\mathbf{e}_2^\top \left( \mathbf{y} + \frac{\eta}{4 \lambda_2} \mathbf{e}_1 \right) = 0 \quad (7.2.8.1)$$

$$\implies \mathbf{e}_2^\top \mathbf{y} = 0, \quad (7.2.8.2)$$

which is the equation of the  $x$ -axis.  $\square$

7.2.9. The point where the parabola intersects its axis of symmetry is called the vertex. For the standard parabola, the vertex is the origin.

*Proof.* (7.2.8.2) can be expressed as

$$\mathbf{y} = \alpha \mathbf{e}_1. \quad (7.2.9.1)$$

Substituting (7.2.9.1) in (7.2.2.2),

$$\alpha^2 \mathbf{e}_1^\top \mathbf{D} \mathbf{e}_1 = -\eta \alpha \mathbf{e}_1^\top \mathbf{e}_1 \quad (7.2.9.2)$$

$$\Rightarrow \alpha = 0, \text{ or, } \mathbf{y} = \mathbf{0}. \quad (7.2.9.3)$$

□

7.2.10. The focal length of the standard parabola, , defined to be the distance between the vertex and the focus, measured along the axis of symmetry, is  $\left| \frac{\eta}{4\lambda_2} \right|$

7.2.11. For the standard hyperbola/ellipse, the length of the major axis is

$$2 \sqrt{\left| \frac{f_0}{\lambda_1} \right|} \quad (7.2.11.1)$$

and the minor axis is

$$2 \sqrt{\left| \frac{f_0}{\lambda_2} \right|} \quad (7.2.11.2)$$

**Solution:** See Appendix A.11.

7.2.12. The latus rectum of a conic section is the chord that passes through the focus and is perpendicular to the major axis. The length of the latus rectum for a conic is given by

$$l = \begin{cases} 2 \frac{\sqrt{|f_0 \lambda_1|}}{\lambda_2} & e \neq 1 \\ \frac{\eta}{\lambda_2} & e = 1 \end{cases} \quad (7.2.12.1)$$

**Solution:** See Appendix A.12.

### 7.3 Chords and Tangents

#### 7.4 Formulae

#### 7.5 Miscellaneous

7.5.1 An arch is in the form of a parabola with its axis vertical. The arch is 10m high and 5m wide at the base. How wide is it 2m from the vertex of the parabola?

7.5.2 The cable of a uniformly loaded suspension bridge hangs in the form of a parabola. The roadway which is horizontal and 100 m long is supported by vertical wires attached to the cable, the longest wire being 30 m and the shortest being 6 m. Find the length of a supporting wire attached to the roadway 18 m from the middle.

**Solution:**

7.5.3 Find the area of the triangle formed by the lines joining the vertex of the parabola

$$x^2 = 12y \quad (7.5.3.1)$$

to the ends of its latus rectum.

7.5.4 An equilateral triangle is inscribed in the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$ , where one vertex is at the vertex of the parabola. Find the length of the side of the triangle.

7.5.5 An arch is in the form of a semi-ellipse. It is 8 m wide and 2 m high at the centre. Find the height of the arch at a point 1.5 m from one end.

7.5.6 A rod of length 12cm moves with its ends always touching the coordinate axes. Determine the equation of

locus of a point P on the rod, which is 3cm from the end in contact with  $x$ -axis.

7.5.7 A man running a racecourse notes that the sum of the distances from the two flag posts from him is always 10 m and the distance between the flag posts is 8 m. Find the equation of the posts traced by the man.

7.5.8 The locus of the point of intersection of lines  $\sqrt{3}x + y - 4\sqrt{3}k = 0$  and  $\sqrt{3} = 0 \sqrt{3}kx + ky - 4\sqrt{3} = 0$  for different value of K is a hyperbola whose eccentricity is 2.

7.5.9 If  $e$  is the eccentricity of the ellipses  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1 (a < b)$ , then

a)  $b^2 = a^2(1 - e^2)$

b)  $a^2 = b^2(1 - e^2)$

c)  $a^2 = b^2(e^2 - 1)$

d)  $b^2 = a^2(e^2 - 1)$

7.5.10 An ellipse is described by using an endless string which is passed over two pins. If the axes are 6cm and 4cm, the length of the string and distance between the pins are

### APPENDIX A CONIC SECTION

A.1. Let  $\mathbf{q}$  be a point such that the ratio of its distance from a fixed point  $\mathbf{F}$  and the distance ( $d$ ) from a fixed line

$$L : \mathbf{n}^\top \mathbf{x} = c \quad (A.1.1)$$

is constant, given by

$$\frac{\|\mathbf{q} - \mathbf{F}\|}{d} = e \quad (A.1.2)$$

The locus of  $\mathbf{q}$  is known as a conic section. The line  $L$  is known as the directrix and the point  $\mathbf{F}$  is the focus.  $e$  is defined to be the eccentricity of the conic.

a) For  $e = 1$ , the conic is a parabola

b) For  $e < 1$ , the conic is an ellipse

c) For  $e > 1$ , the conic is a hyperbola

A.2. The equation of a conic with directrix  $\mathbf{n}^\top \mathbf{x} = c$ , eccentricity  $e$  and focus  $\mathbf{F}$  is given by

$$g(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{V} \mathbf{x} + 2\mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{x} + f = 0 \quad (A.2.1)$$

where

$$\mathbf{V} = \|\mathbf{n}\|^2 \mathbf{I} - e^2 \mathbf{n} \mathbf{n}^\top, \quad (A.2.2)$$

$$\mathbf{u} = ce^2 \mathbf{n} - \|\mathbf{n}\|^2 \mathbf{F}, \quad (A.2.3)$$

$$f = \|\mathbf{n}\|^2 \|\mathbf{F}\|^2 - c^2 e^2 \quad (A.2.4)$$

**Solution:** Using Definition A.1 and (4.4.2.6), for any point  $\mathbf{x}$  on the conic,

$$\begin{aligned} \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{F}\|^2 &= e^2 \frac{(\mathbf{n}^\top \mathbf{x} - c)^2}{\|\mathbf{n}\|^2} \\ \Rightarrow \|\mathbf{n}\|^2 (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{F})^\top (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{F}) &= e^2 (\mathbf{n}^\top \mathbf{x} - c)^2 \\ \Rightarrow \|\mathbf{n}\|^2 (\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{x} - 2\mathbf{F}^\top \mathbf{x} + \|\mathbf{F}\|^2) &= e^2 (c^2 + (\mathbf{n}^\top \mathbf{x})^2 - 2c\mathbf{n}^\top \mathbf{x}) \\ &= e^2 (c^2 + (\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{n} \mathbf{n}^\top \mathbf{x}) - 2c\mathbf{n}^\top \mathbf{x}) \quad (A.2.5) \end{aligned}$$

which can be expressed as (A.2.1) after simplification.

A.3. The eccentricity, directrices and foci of (A.2.1) are given by

$$e = \sqrt{1 - \frac{\lambda_1}{\lambda_2}} \quad (\text{A.3.1})$$

$$\mathbf{n} = \sqrt{\lambda_2} \mathbf{p}_1,$$

$$c = \begin{cases} \frac{e \mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{n} \pm \sqrt{e^2 (\mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{n})^2 - \lambda_2 (e^2 - 1) (\|\mathbf{u}\|^2 - \lambda_2 f)}}{\lambda_2 e (e^2 - 1)} & e \neq 1 \\ \frac{\|\mathbf{u}\|^2 - \lambda_2 f}{2 \mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{n}} & e = 1 \end{cases} \quad (\text{A.3.2})$$

$$\mathbf{F} = \frac{ce^2 \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{u}}{\lambda_2} \quad (\text{A.3.3})$$

**Solution:** From (A.2.2), using the fact that  $\mathbf{V}$  is symmetric with  $\mathbf{V} = \mathbf{V}^\top$ ,

$$\mathbf{V}^\top \mathbf{V} = (\|\mathbf{n}\|^2 \mathbf{I} - e^2 \mathbf{n} \mathbf{n}^\top)^\top (\|\mathbf{n}\|^2 \mathbf{I} - e^2 \mathbf{n} \mathbf{n}^\top) \quad (\text{A.3.4})$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{V}^2 = \|\mathbf{n}\|^4 \mathbf{I} + e^4 \mathbf{n} \mathbf{n}^\top \mathbf{n} \mathbf{n}^\top - 2e^2 \|\mathbf{n}\|^2 \mathbf{n} \mathbf{n}^\top \quad (\text{A.3.5})$$

$$= \|\mathbf{n}\|^4 \mathbf{I} + e^4 \|\mathbf{n}\|^2 \mathbf{n} \mathbf{n}^\top - 2e^2 \|\mathbf{n}\|^2 \mathbf{n} \mathbf{n}^\top \quad (\text{A.3.6})$$

$$= \|\mathbf{n}\|^4 \mathbf{I} + e^2 (e^2 - 2) \|\mathbf{n}\|^2 \mathbf{n} \mathbf{n}^\top \quad (\text{A.3.7})$$

$$= \|\mathbf{n}\|^4 \mathbf{I} + (e^2 - 2) \|\mathbf{n}\|^2 (\|\mathbf{n}\|^2 \mathbf{I} - \mathbf{V}) \quad (\text{A.3.8})$$

which can be expressed as

$$\mathbf{V}^2 + (e^2 - 2) \|\mathbf{n}\|^2 \mathbf{V} - (e^2 - 1) \|\mathbf{n}\|^4 \mathbf{I} = 0 \quad (\text{A.3.9})$$

Using the Cayley-Hamilton theorem, (A.3.9) results in the characteristic equation,

$$\lambda^2 - (2 - e^2) \|\mathbf{n}\|^2 \lambda + (1 - e^2) \|\mathbf{n}\|^4 = 0 \quad (\text{A.3.10})$$

which can be expressed as

$$\left( \frac{\lambda}{\|\mathbf{n}\|^2} \right)^2 - (2 - e^2) \left( \frac{\lambda}{\|\mathbf{n}\|^2} \right) + (1 - e^2) = 0 \quad (\text{A.3.11})$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{\lambda}{\|\mathbf{n}\|^2} = 1 - e^2, 1 \quad (\text{A.3.12})$$

$$\text{or, } \lambda_2 = \|\mathbf{n}\|^2, \lambda_1 = (1 - e^2) \lambda_2 \quad (\text{A.3.13})$$

From (A.3.13), the eccentricity of (A.2.1) is given by (A.3.1). Multiplying both sides of (A.2.2) by  $\mathbf{n}$ ,

$$\mathbf{V} \mathbf{n} = \|\mathbf{n}\|^2 \mathbf{n} - e^2 \mathbf{n} \mathbf{n}^\top \mathbf{n} \quad (\text{A.3.14})$$

$$= \|\mathbf{n}\|^2 (1 - e^2) \mathbf{n} \quad (\text{A.3.15})$$

$$= \lambda_1 \mathbf{n} \quad (\text{A.3.16})$$

$$(\text{A.3.17})$$

from (A.3.13). Thus,  $\lambda_1$  is the corresponding eigenvalue for  $\mathbf{n}$ . From (1.7.5.2) and (A.3.17), this implies that

$$\mathbf{p}_1 = \frac{\mathbf{n}}{\|\mathbf{n}\|} \quad (\text{A.3.18})$$

$$\text{or, } \mathbf{n} = \|\mathbf{n}\| \mathbf{p}_1 = \sqrt{\lambda_2} \mathbf{p}_1 \quad (\text{A.3.19})$$

from (A.3.13). From (A.2.3) and (A.3.13),

$$\mathbf{F} = \frac{ce^2 \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{u}}{\lambda_2} \quad (\text{A.3.20})$$

$$\Rightarrow \|\mathbf{F}\|^2 = \frac{(ce^2 \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{u})^\top (ce^2 \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{u})}{\lambda_2^2} \quad (\text{A.3.21})$$

$$\Rightarrow \lambda_2^2 \|\mathbf{F}\|^2 = c^2 e^4 \lambda_2 - 2ce^2 \mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{n} + \|\mathbf{u}\|^2 \quad (\text{A.3.22})$$

Also, (A.2.4) can be expressed as

$$\lambda_2 \|\mathbf{F}\|^2 = f + c^2 e^2 \quad (\text{A.3.23})$$

From (A.3.22) and (A.3.23),

$$c^2 e^4 \lambda_2 - 2ce^2 \mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{n} + \|\mathbf{u}\|^2 = \lambda_2 (f + c^2 e^2) \quad (\text{A.3.24})$$

$$\Rightarrow \lambda_2 e^2 (e^2 - 1) c^2 - 2ce^2 \mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{n} + \|\mathbf{u}\|^2 - \lambda_2 f = 0 \quad (\text{A.3.25})$$

yielding (A.3.3).

A.4. (A.2.1) represents

a) a parabola for  $|\mathbf{V}| = 0$ ,

b) ellipse for  $|\mathbf{V}| > 0$  and

c) hyperbola for  $|\mathbf{V}| < 0$ .

**Solution:** From (A.3.1),

$$\frac{\lambda_1}{\lambda_2} = 1 - e^2 \quad (\text{A.4.1})$$

Also,

$$|\mathbf{V}| = \lambda_1 \lambda_2 \quad (\text{A.4.2})$$

yielding Table A.4.

Eccentricity	Conic	Eigenvalue	Determinant
$e = 1$	Parabola	$\lambda_1 = 0$	$ \mathbf{V}  = 0$
$e < 1$	Ellipse	$\lambda_1 > 0, \lambda_2 > 0$	$ \mathbf{V}  > 0$
$e > 1$	Hyperbola	$\lambda_1 < 0, \lambda_2 > 0$	$ \mathbf{V}  < 0$

TABLE A.4

A.5. Using (2.12.1.1), (A.2.1) can be expressed as

$$(\mathbf{P} \mathbf{y} + \mathbf{c})^\top \mathbf{V} (\mathbf{P} \mathbf{y} + \mathbf{c}) + 2 \mathbf{u}^\top (\mathbf{P} \mathbf{y} + \mathbf{c}) + f = 0, \quad (\text{A.5.1})$$

yielding

$$\mathbf{y}^\top \mathbf{P}^\top \mathbf{V} \mathbf{P} \mathbf{y} + 2 (\mathbf{V} \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{u})^\top \mathbf{P} \mathbf{y} + \mathbf{c}^\top \mathbf{V} \mathbf{c} + 2 \mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{c} + f = 0 \quad (\text{A.5.2})$$

From (A.5.2) and (1.7.7.1),

$$\mathbf{y}^\top \mathbf{D} \mathbf{y} + 2 (\mathbf{V} \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{u})^\top \mathbf{P} \mathbf{y} + \mathbf{c}^\top (\mathbf{V} \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{u}) + \mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{c} + f = 0 \quad (\text{A.5.3})$$

When  $\mathbf{V}^{-1}$  exists, choosing

$$\mathbf{V} \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}, \quad \text{or, } \mathbf{c} = -\mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{u}, \quad (\text{A.5.4})$$

and substituting (A.5.4) in (A.5.3) yields (7.2.2.1). When  $|\mathbf{V}| = 0, \lambda_1 = 0$  and

$$\mathbf{V} \mathbf{p}_1 = 0, \mathbf{V} \mathbf{p}_2 = \lambda_2 \mathbf{p}_2. \quad (\text{A.5.5})$$



Substituting (7.2.1.2) in (A.5.3),

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \mathbf{y}^T \mathbf{D} \mathbf{y} + 2(\mathbf{c}^T \mathbf{V} + \mathbf{u}^T)(\mathbf{p}_1 \quad \mathbf{p}_2) \mathbf{y} \\
 & \quad + \mathbf{c}^T (\mathbf{V} \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{u}) + \mathbf{u}^T \mathbf{c} + f = 0 \\
 \implies & \mathbf{y}^T \mathbf{D} \mathbf{y} + 2((\mathbf{c}^T \mathbf{V} + \mathbf{u}^T) \mathbf{p}_1 (\mathbf{c}^T \mathbf{V} + \mathbf{u}^T) \mathbf{p}_2) \mathbf{y} \\
 & \quad + \mathbf{c}^T (\mathbf{V} \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{u}) + \mathbf{u}^T \mathbf{c} + f = 0 \\
 \implies & \mathbf{y}^T \mathbf{D} \mathbf{y} + 2(\mathbf{u}^T \mathbf{p}_1 \quad (\lambda_2 \mathbf{c}^T + \mathbf{u}^T) \mathbf{p}_2) \mathbf{y} \\
 & \quad + \mathbf{c}^T (\mathbf{V} \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{u}) + \mathbf{u}^T \mathbf{c} + f = 0 \quad (\text{A.5.6})
 \end{aligned}$$

upon substituting from (A.5.5), yielding

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \lambda_2 y_2^2 + 2(\mathbf{u}^T \mathbf{p}_1) y_1 + 2y_2 (\lambda_2 \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{u})^T \mathbf{p}_2 \\
 & \quad + \mathbf{c}^T (\mathbf{V} \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{u}) + \mathbf{u}^T \mathbf{c} + f = 0 \quad (\text{A.5.7})
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, (A.5.7) can be expressed as (7.2.2.2) by choosing

$$\eta = 2\mathbf{u}^T \mathbf{p}_1 \quad (\text{A.5.8})$$

and  $\mathbf{c}$  in (A.5.3) such that

$$2\mathbf{P}^T (\mathbf{V} \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{u}) = \eta \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{A.5.9})$$

$$\mathbf{c}^T (\mathbf{V} \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{u}) + \mathbf{u}^T \mathbf{c} + f = 0 \quad (\text{A.5.10})$$

A.6. The center/vertex of a conic section are given by

$$\mathbf{c} = -\mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{u} \quad |\mathbf{V}| \neq 0 \quad (\text{A.6.1})$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{u}^T + \frac{\eta}{2} \mathbf{p}_1^T \\ \mathbf{v} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{c} = \begin{pmatrix} -f \\ \frac{\eta}{2} \mathbf{p}_1 - \mathbf{u} \end{pmatrix} \quad |\mathbf{V}| = 0 \quad (\text{A.6.2})$$

**Solution:**  $\because \mathbf{P}^T \mathbf{P} = \mathbf{I}$ , multiplying (A.5.9) by  $\mathbf{P}$  yields

$$(\mathbf{V} \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{u}) = \frac{\eta}{2} \mathbf{p}_1, \quad (\text{A.6.3})$$

which, upon substituting in (A.5.10) results in

$$\frac{\eta}{2} \mathbf{c}^T \mathbf{p}_1 + \mathbf{u}^T \mathbf{c} + f = 0 \quad (\text{A.6.4})$$

(A.6.3) and (A.6.4) can be clubbed together to obtain (A.6.2).

A.7. The points of intersection of the line

$$L: \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{h} + \mu \mathbf{m} \quad \mu \in \mathbb{R} \quad (\text{A.7.1})$$

with the conic section in (A.2.1) are given by

$$\mathbf{x}_i = \mathbf{h} + \mu_i \mathbf{m} \quad (\text{A.7.2})$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mu_i = & \frac{1}{\mathbf{m}^T \mathbf{V} \mathbf{m}} \left( -\mathbf{m}^T (\mathbf{V} \mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u}) \right. \\
 & \left. \pm \sqrt{[\mathbf{m}^T (\mathbf{V} \mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u})]^2 - g(\mathbf{h}) (\mathbf{m}^T \mathbf{V} \mathbf{m})} \right) \quad (\text{A.7.3})
 \end{aligned}$$

*Proof.* Substituting (A.7.1) in (A.2.1),

$$(\mathbf{h} + \mu \mathbf{m})^T \mathbf{V} (\mathbf{h} + \mu \mathbf{m}) + 2\mathbf{u}^T (\mathbf{h} + \mu \mathbf{m}) + f = 0 \quad (\text{A.7.4})$$

$$\implies \mu^2 \mathbf{m}^T \mathbf{V} \mathbf{m} + 2\mu \mathbf{m}^T (\mathbf{V} \mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u}) + \mathbf{h}^T \mathbf{V} \mathbf{h} + 2\mathbf{u}^T \mathbf{h} + f = 0 \quad (\text{A.7.5})$$

$$\text{or, } \mu^2 \mathbf{m}^T \mathbf{V} \mathbf{m} + 2\mu \mathbf{m}^T (\mathbf{V} \mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u}) + g(\mathbf{h}) = 0 \quad (\text{A.7.6})$$

for  $g$  defined in (A.2.1). Solving the above quadratic in (A.7.6) yields (A.7.3).  $\square$

A.8. If  $L$  in (A.7.1) touches (A.2.1) at exactly one point  $\mathbf{q}$ ,

$$\mathbf{m}^T (\mathbf{V} \mathbf{q} + \mathbf{u}) = 0 \quad (\text{A.8.1})$$

*Proof.* In this case, (A.7.6) has exactly one root. Hence, in (A.7.3)

$$[\mathbf{m}^T (\mathbf{V} \mathbf{q} + \mathbf{u})]^2 - (\mathbf{m}^T \mathbf{V} \mathbf{m}) g(\mathbf{q}) = 0 \quad (\text{A.8.2})$$

$\because \mathbf{q}$  is the point of contact,

$$g(\mathbf{q}) = 0 \quad (\text{A.8.3})$$

Substituting (A.8.3) in (A.8.2) and simplifying, we obtain (A.8.1).  $\square$

A.9. The length of the chord in (A.7.1) is given by

$$\frac{2\sqrt{[\mathbf{m}^T (\mathbf{V} \mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u})]^2 - (\mathbf{h}^T \mathbf{V} \mathbf{h} + 2\mathbf{u}^T \mathbf{h} + f) (\mathbf{m}^T \mathbf{V} \mathbf{m})}}{\mathbf{m}^T \mathbf{V} \mathbf{m}} \|\mathbf{m}\| \quad (\text{A.9.1})$$

*Proof.* The distance between the points in (A.7.2) is given by

$$\|\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2\| = |\mu_1 - \mu_2| \|\mathbf{m}\| \quad (\text{A.9.2})$$

Substituting  $\mu_i$  from (A.7.3) in (A.9.2) yields (A.9.1).  $\square$

A.10. The affine transform for the conic section, preserves the norm. This implies that the length of any chord of a conic is invariant to translation and/or rotation.

*Proof.* Let

$$\mathbf{x}_i = \mathbf{P} \mathbf{y}_i + \mathbf{c} \quad (\text{A.10.1})$$

be any two points on the conic. Then the distance between the points is given by

$$\|\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2\| = \|\mathbf{P} (\mathbf{y}_1 - \mathbf{y}_2)\| \quad (\text{A.10.2})$$

which can be expressed as

$$\|\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2\|^2 = (\mathbf{y}_1 - \mathbf{y}_2)^T \mathbf{P}^T \mathbf{P} (\mathbf{y}_1 - \mathbf{y}_2) \quad (\text{A.10.3})$$

$$= \|\mathbf{y}_1 - \mathbf{y}_2\|^2 \quad (\text{A.10.4})$$

since

$$\mathbf{P}^T \mathbf{P} = \mathbf{I} \quad (\text{A.10.5})$$

$\square$

A.11. Since the major axis passes through the origin,

$$\mathbf{q} = \mathbf{0} \quad (\text{A.11.1})$$

Further, from Corollary (7.2.6),

$$\mathbf{m} = \mathbf{e}_2, \quad (\text{A.11.2})$$

and from (7.2.2.1),

$$\mathbf{V} = \frac{\mathbf{D}}{f_0}, \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}, f = -1 \quad (\text{A.11.3})$$

Substituting the above in (A.9.1),

$$\frac{2\sqrt{\mathbf{e}_1^\top \frac{\mathbf{D}}{f_0} \mathbf{e}_1}}{\mathbf{e}_1^\top \frac{\mathbf{D}}{f_0} \mathbf{e}_1} \|\mathbf{e}_1\| \quad (\text{A.11.4})$$

yielding (7.2.11.1). Similarly, for the minor axis, the only different parameter is

$$\mathbf{m} = \mathbf{e}_2, \quad (\text{A.11.5})$$

Substituting the above in (A.9.1),

$$\frac{2\sqrt{\mathbf{e}_2^\top \frac{\mathbf{D}}{f_0} \mathbf{e}_2}}{\mathbf{e}_2^\top \frac{\mathbf{D}}{f_0} \mathbf{e}_2} \|\mathbf{e}_2\| \quad (\text{A.11.6})$$

yielding (7.2.11.2).

A.12. The latus rectum is perpendicular to the major axis for the standard conic. Hence, from Corollary (7.2.6),

$$\mathbf{m} = \mathbf{e}_2, \quad (\text{A.12.1})$$

Since it passes through the focus, from (7.2.3.3)

$$\mathbf{q} = \mathbf{F} = \pm e \sqrt{\frac{f_0}{\lambda_2(1-e^2)}} \mathbf{e}_1 \quad (\text{A.12.2})$$

for the standard hyperbola/ellipse. Also, from (7.2.2.1),

$$\mathbf{V} = \frac{\mathbf{D}}{f_0}, \mathbf{u} = 0, f = -1 \quad (\text{A.12.3})$$

Substituting the above in (A.9.1),

$$\frac{2\sqrt{\left[\mathbf{e}_2^\top \left(\frac{\mathbf{D}}{f_0} e \sqrt{\frac{f_0}{\lambda_2(1-e^2)}} \mathbf{e}_1\right)\right]^2 - \left(e \sqrt{\frac{f_0}{\lambda_2(1-e^2)}} \mathbf{e}_1^\top \frac{\mathbf{D}}{f_0} e \sqrt{\frac{f_0}{\lambda_2(1-e^2)}} \mathbf{e}_1 - 1\right) \left(\mathbf{e}_2^\top \frac{\mathbf{D}}{f_0} \mathbf{e}_2\right)}}{\mathbf{e}_2^\top \frac{\mathbf{D}}{f_0} \mathbf{e}_2} \|\mathbf{e}_2\| \quad (\text{A.12.4})$$

Since

$$\mathbf{e}_2^\top \mathbf{D} \mathbf{e}_1 = 0, \mathbf{e}_1^\top \mathbf{D} \mathbf{e}_1 = \lambda_1, \mathbf{e}_1^\top \mathbf{e}_1 = 1, \|\mathbf{e}_2\| = 1, \mathbf{e}_2^\top \mathbf{D} \mathbf{e}_2 = \lambda_2, \quad (\text{A.12.5})$$

(A.12.4) can be expressed as

$$\frac{2\sqrt{\left(1 - \frac{\lambda_1 e^2}{\lambda_2(1-e^2)}\right) \left(\frac{\lambda_2}{f_0}\right)}}{\frac{\lambda_2}{f_0}} \quad (\text{A.12.6})$$

$$= 2 \frac{\sqrt{f_0 \lambda_1}}{\lambda_2} \quad \left(\because e^2 = 1 - \frac{\lambda_1}{\lambda_2}\right) \quad (\text{A.12.7})$$

For the standard parabola, the parameters in (A.9.1) are

$$\mathbf{q} = \mathbf{F} = -\frac{\eta}{4\lambda_2} \mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{m} = \mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{V} = \mathbf{D}, \mathbf{u} = \frac{\eta}{2} \mathbf{e}_1^\top, f = 0 \quad (\text{A.12.8})$$

Substituting the above in (A.9.1), the length of the latus rectum can be expressed as

$$\frac{2\sqrt{\left[\mathbf{e}_2^\top \left(\mathbf{D} \left(-\frac{\eta}{4\lambda_2} \mathbf{e}_1\right) + \frac{\eta}{2} \mathbf{e}_1\right)\right]^2 - \left(\left(-\frac{\eta}{4\lambda_2} \mathbf{e}_1\right)^\top \mathbf{D} \left(-\frac{\eta}{4\lambda_2} \mathbf{e}_1\right) + 2\frac{\eta}{2} \mathbf{e}_1^\top \left(-\frac{\eta}{4\lambda_2} \mathbf{e}_1\right)\right) \left(\mathbf{e}_2^\top \mathbf{D} \mathbf{e}_2\right)}}{\mathbf{e}_2^\top \mathbf{D} \mathbf{e}_2} \|\mathbf{e}_2\| \quad (\text{A.12.9})$$

Since

$$\mathbf{e}_2^\top \mathbf{D} \mathbf{e}_1 = 0, \mathbf{e}_2^\top \mathbf{e}_2 = 0, \mathbf{e}_1^\top \mathbf{D} \mathbf{e}_1 = 0, \mathbf{e}_1^\top \mathbf{e}_1 = 1, \|\mathbf{e}_1\| = 1, \mathbf{e}_2^\top \mathbf{D} \mathbf{e}_2 = \lambda_2, \quad (\text{A.12.10})$$

(A.12.9) can be expressed as

$$2 \frac{\sqrt{\frac{\eta^2}{4\lambda_2} \lambda_2}}{\lambda_2} = \frac{\eta}{\lambda_2} \quad (\text{A.12.11})$$